VISIT…

LANZAROTE Caliente.COM

Instructions

Regular study and practice with this course is much more efficient than attempting large amounts at irregular intervals. 'A little and often' is preferable to 'a lot but seldom'.

1 The Alphabet

Work through the Alphabet Booklet, following the instructions in it.

2 The Introduction

N.B. Captions under the pictures and names of people speaking (which are followed by a colon) are not recorded.

Turn to page 2 in your Illustrated book and to the very beginning of your Hebrew recordings. Study only a few sentences at a time, as follows:

1 **Recording** First, listen without looking at the text, to get a general impression of the pronunciation.

2 **Recording Illustrated book** Listen again and follow the words in the Textbook. Try to associate the sounds you hear with the letters in front of you. Continue until you are able to read the text to yourself (not aloud yet) without referring to the recordings.

3 **Handbook** Refer to the Handbook, pages 1, 2 and 3, for the meaning. Each sentence is translated. (No grammatical explanations are given for the Introduction. We just want you to understand the meaning of each sentence. From Lesson 1, explanations are given.)

4 **Recording** Listen again with the meaning in mind. Continue until you are able to understand easily while listening.

5 **Handbook** Look at the translation and try to recall the Hebrew sentences. If you are not yet sure of them, listen again.

6 Repeat the same process for the next few sentences. Continue in this way until you have worked through all three parts of the Introduction.

3 The Lessons

For each lesson:

1 **Recording** Listen to the recording of Part 1 once. Don't try to understand at this stage. Just listen.

2 **Handbook** Read the section 'What happens'. This will give you an idea of what happens in Part 1.

3 **Recording** Listen to the recording of Part 1 several times more. You will find that you are becoming accustomed to the sounds of the language.

4 **Recording Illustrated book** Listen to the recording of Part 1 and follow it in the book several times. You will now be able to relate what you hear to what you see printed. At the same time, the pictures will help you to understand a little.

5 **Handbook** Work out the meaning, using the lesson notes and alphabetical vocabulary.

6 **Recording** Listen to the recording again now that you understand the meaning. Continue to listen until you can understand everything as you hear it.

7 **Recording Illustrated book** Read the text to yourself and then read it aloud several times. If you have any doubts about the pronunciation of any word or phrase, listen to that part of the recording again.

8 Now repeat instructions 1–7 for Part 2 and then for Part 3.

9 **Written Exercises book** Do the first exercise on a separate piece of paper (or in a notebook), *not* in the book.

i. Read the four sentences a, b, c and d.

ii. Write down the letter which is alongside the one correct sentence. The other sentences are incorrect. Do the whole exercise like this.

Then:

iii. Check your answers against the key at the end of the book.

10 If you have made no more than one mistake in the exercise go on to instruction 11. If you *have* made more than one mistake, go back to instruction 4 in the Handbook and work through the lesson again.

11 **Written Exercises book** Do the remaining written exercises on the lesson on a separate sheet of paper, not in the book.

i. Read the examples. They show you what you have to do.

ii. Handprint each answer in full, including the first two or three, which are the same as the examples.

iii. Check your answers against the key at the end of the book.

iv. If you have made a mistake and cannot understand why, refer to the text again and check with the appendix on pages 238-282 of the Handbook.

v. If you have made more than two mistakes in one exercise, do the exercise again but first study the lesson again.

12 Go on to the next lesson.

General

Handbook In the appendix you will find some amplification of the points of grammar you have met in the lessons. As you work through the course, refer to the appendix more and more to ensure a good grounding in Hebrew grammar.

Introduction

Part one

Getting Acquainted and Greetings

The Teacher Narkis: Hello!
My name is Mr Narkis.
I am from Israel.
I am a teacher.
I am a Hebrew teacher.
You are a student.
You are not Israeli.
You are from England.
You are learning Hebrew.

Sarah, you are a student.
You are not Israeli.
You are from America.
You are learning Hebrew.
Here is a book.
Here is a record.
And here is a tape.

Part two

Conversation between the teacher and David, the student.

Mr Narkis : Good morning!
David : Good morning, Mr Narkis.
Mr Narkis : What is your name?
David : My name is David.
Mr Narkis : How are you David?
David : Very well, thank you. And you?
Mr Narkis : Fine thank you. I am the teacher. Who are you? The teacher?
David : No, I am the student.
Mr Narkis : What are you learning?
David : I am learning Hebrew.
Mr Narkis : Here is the book, on the table.
David : A book in Hebrew or in English?
Mr Narkis : A book in Hebrew.
David : Very good, thank you.
I am in Israel.
I am learning Hebrew.
Good-bye!

Conversation between the teacher and Sarah, the student.

Mr Narkis : Good morning!
Sarah : Good morning, Mr Narkis.
Mr Narkis : What is your name?
Sarah : My name is Sarah.
Mr Narkis : How are you?
Sarah : Very well, thank you.
Mr Narkis : Are you the teacher?
Sarah : No, I am the student.
Mr Narkis : Are you learning English?
Sarah : No, I am learning Hebrew.
Mr Narkis : Where is the book?
Sarah : Here is the book, and where is the record?
Mr Narkis : The record is on the table.
Sarah : I am a student.
I am in Israel.
I am learning Hebrew.
Good-bye!

Part three

Mr Berman : Good morning!
My name is David Berman.
I am from America.
I am speaking Hebrew.
I am in Israel.
My brother, Moshe, is in Tel-Aviv.
Please meet my wife, Hannah.
Hannah : Good morning!
My name is Hannah.
I am also speaking Hebrew.
I am the mother of the family.
I have a son and a daughter.
Mr Berman : Here is my son.
Please meet Mike!
Mike : Good morning!
My name is Mike.
I am also from America.
I am sixteen.
I am studying at school.
Mr Berman : And here is my daughter.
Susan : Hello!
My name is Susan.
I am nineteen.
I am a student.
I am studying at the University
Mr Berman : Good-bye, and see you soon.

שִׁעוּר רִאשׁוֹן בִּשְׂדֵה הַתְּעוּפָה
Lesson one At the Airport

What happens

Part one

David Berman, a teacher of English who speaks Hebrew fluently, introduces himself and his family. He says that he has come to Israel with his family from America to spend their vacation there and that now they are at Lod airport.

Part two

בַּמֶּכֶס At the Customs
Mr. Berman goes through customs, talks with the customs official, identifies his suitcase, says he has nothing to declare and is allowed to pass.

פְּגִישָׁה עִם הַמִּשְׁפָּחָה A Meeting with Relatives
Mr. Berman meets his brother Moshe. They exchange greetings. Mr. Berman tells a porter to take his suitcase to a taxi.

Part three

בַּמּוֹנִית In the Taxi
Mr. Berman engages a taxi which takes him to his hotel. He pays the driver twenty pounds.

Notes

Part one

1. בִּשְׂדֵה הַתְּעוּפָה — At the airport (literally: At the field of aviation). For the use of—בּ at the beginning of a word, see note 3 below.

2. שְׁמִי דָּוִד בֶּרְמַן — My name is David Berman.

a. This sentence in Hebrew contains no verb but consists of two parts: *my name* and *David Berman*. This is one of the main sentence-types in Hebrew. The present tense of *to be* (i.e.: *am, are, is*) is not expressed in Hebrew. אֲנִי מוֹרֶה *I am a teacher.*

b. שְׁמִי — *my name*. The ending ִי is attached to the noun to express the English *my*. Other examples in this lesson: אִשְׁתִּי *my wife*; בִּתִּי *my daughter*; בְּנִי my *son*; אָחִי *my brother.*

3. אֲנִי גָּר בְּשִׁיקָגוֹ — I live in Chicago.

בְּשִׁיקָגוֹ — *in Chicago*. The letter בּ, attached to the beginning of a word, is used in Hebrew to express the English prepositions *in, with, by* or *at*, according to context and English usage.

4. אֲנִי גָּר בִּרְחוֹב לוֹנְדוֹן מִסְפָּר שְׁמוֹנִים — I live at 80, London Street.

a. In Hebrew, the name of the street is given first followed by the number.

b. The "tens" of the Hebrew numerals 20, 30 etc. end in ים: שְׁלֹשָׁה — 3, שְׁלֹשִׁים — 30; אַרְבָּעָה — 4, אַרְבָּעִים — 40; etc. Here we have שְׁמוֹנִים — 80.

5. אֲנִי מוֹרֶה לְאַנְגְּלִית — I am an English teacher.

a. See note 2a above. The verb *is* is not expressed.

b. The articles *a, an* are also not expressed in Hebrew: מוֹרֶה *a teacher;* אַרְכֵיאוֹלוֹג *an archaeologist.*

c. לְאַנְגְּלִית *for English.* The English words *to, for,* known as prepositions, are expressed in Hebrew by the prefix —לְ.

6. אֲנִי בֶּן אַרְבָּעִים וְחָמֵשׁ שָׁנָה I am 45. (I am the son of 45 years.)

Age is expressed in Hebrew by the use of בֵּן *the son of* for masculine speakers and בַּת *the daughter of* for feminine speakers.

7. אֲנִי מְבַקֵּר בְּיִשְׂרָאֵל עִם הַמִּשְׁפָּחָה שֶׁלִּי I am visiting Israel with my family.

a. מְבַקֵּר בְּיִשְׂרָאֵל Note: English — *to visit Israel*

Hebrew — *to visit in Israel*

For the use of the prefix —בְּ see note 3 above.

b. הַמִּשְׁפָּחָה שֶׁלִּי *my family (the family of mine).* In spoken Hebrew, שֶׁלִּי (from שֶׁל *of*) is commonly used to express *my,* instead of the ending ִי attached to the noun (see note 2b above). Thus *my name* can therefore be שְׁמִי or הַשֵּׁם שֶׁלִּי.

8. יֵשׁ לִי אִשָּׁה, בֵּן וּבַת I have a wife, a son and a daughter. (There is to me a wife, a son and a daughter.)

a. לִי *to me,* from —לְ *to*

b. יֵשׁ לִי *I have.* The verb *to have* does not occur in Hebrew. The English for *I have, we have etc.,* is translated as *there is to me, to us etc.,* or *there are to me, to you, to us etc.*

c. וּבַת *and a daughter. And* is expressed in Hebrew by the prefix —וְ or —וּ. (See Grammar Appendix Note 91).

9. אִשְׁתִּי חַנָּה הִיא בַּת אַרְבָּעִים שָׁנָה My wife, Hannah, is forty. (My wife, Hannah, she is the daughter of forty years.) See note 6 on expressing age in Hebrew.

a. אִשְׁתִּי *my wife.* See note 7b. The ending ִי is attached to the noun to express the English equivalent of *my* (m. and f.). However, as stated above, you may say הָאִשָּׁה שֶׁלִּי *my wife,* especially in spoken Hebrew. Note also that אִשָּׁה means *woman* or *wife.*

b. הִיא *she, she is.* The personal pronouns in Hebrew הוּא *he (is)* הִיא *she (is)* are used for emphasis or clarity.

10. גַּם אִשְׁתִּי מוֹרָה My wife, too, is a teacher. (My wife is also a teacher.)

מוֹרָה *a teacher (f).* Most feminine nouns in Hebrew end in ָה.

11. הִיא מוֹרָה לְצָרְפָתִית She is a French teacher.

לְצָרְפָתִית *for French* (see note 5c.)

12. בִּתִּי סוּזָן הִיא סְטוּדֶנְטִית My daughter, Susan, is a student.

a. בִּתִּי *my daughter* בַּת *daughter*

b. סְטוּדֶנְטִית *a student (f.).* Another clear indication of the feminine noun is the ending ת—. See also note 10.

13. הִיא לוֹמֶדֶת בָּאוּנִיבֶרְסִיטָה She is studying at the University.

לוֹמֶדֶת *studying (f.).* Note the feminine ending ת—.

14. הִיא בַּת תְּשַׁע־עֶשְׂרֵה — She is nineteen years old.

15. הִיא רוֹצָה לִהְיוֹת גַּנֶּנֶת — She wants to be a kindergarten teacher.

a. הִיא רוֹצָה — *she wants.* Note the feminine suffix ה ָ. Remember the suffixes ה ָ and ת– express the feminine gender (notes 10 and 12b).

b. לִהְיוֹת — *to be*, infinitive form of הָיָה *be.*

c. גַּנֶּנֶת — *kindergarten teacher (f.).* Cf. גַּן *garden.*

16. בְּנִי מַיְיק הוּא תַּלְמִיד — My son, Mike, is a student.

תַּלְמִיד — *a student, a pupil,* usually referring to a junior or secondary school student.

17. הוּא לוֹמֵד בְּבֵית־סֵפֶר תִּיכוֹן — He is studying in a secondary school.

a. בְּבֵית סֵפֶר — *in a school (in a house of book)*

b. לוֹמֵד — *learning (m.).* Note the Hebrew הוּא לוֹמֵד *he learns* or *he is learning*. The feminine is הִיא לוֹמֶדֶת *she learns* or *she is learning.* See note 13.

18. הוּא רוֹצֶה לִהְיוֹת אַרְכֵיאוֹלוֹג — He wants to be an archaeologist.

הוּא רוֹצֶה — *he wants*, but הִיא רוֹצָה *she wants* (note 15a).

19. בְּיִשְׂרָאֵל יֵשׁ לִי אָח — I have a brother in Israel. (In Israel there is to me a brother.) See note 8b.

20. אָחִי גָּר בְּתֵל־אָבִיב — My brother lives in Tel-Aviv.

21. עַכְשָׁו אֲנִי בִּשְׂדֵה הַתְּעוּפָה בְּלוֹד — Now I am at Lod (Lydda) airport.

בְּלוֹד — *at Lod.* Lod is the main international airport of Israel.

Part Two

22. הַפָּקִיד: הַאִם כָּל הַמִּזְוָדוֹת הָאֵלֶּה שֶׁלְּךָ? — Official: Do all these suitcases belong to you?

a. הַאִם — This word is not translated in English. It introduces a question, equivalent to the French usage of *est-ce que?* The word is placed at the beginning of the sentence and there is no change in the order of the words in the Hebrew sentence.
אַתָּה גָּר בְּתֵל־אָבִיב *You live in Tel-Aviv.*
הַאִם אַתָּה גָּר בְּתֵל־אָבִיב? *Do you live in Tel-Aviv?*

b. כָּל הַמִּזְוָדוֹת — *all the suitcases.* When כָּל is followed by a known or definite noun, it means *all, the whole, the entire,* otherwise it means *every, each.*
כָּל תַּיָּר *each tourist* but כָּל הַתַּיָּרִים *all the tourists*
כָּל יוֹם *every day* but כָּל הַיּוֹם *the entire day.*

c. הָאֵלֶּה — *these.* It is used with both masculine and feminine nouns and follows the noun. הַמִּזְוָדוֹת הָאֵלֶּה *these suitcases.*

d. שֶׁלְּךָ — *yours.* It can also be used as *your.* הַמִּשְׁפָּחָה שֶׁלְּךָ *your family,* הַדַּרְכּוֹן שֶׁלְּךָ *your passport.*

23. כֵּן, הַמִּזְוָדוֹת הָאֵלֶּה שֶׁל כָּל הַמִּשְׁפָּחָה
Yes, these suitcases belong to the entire family.

a. כֵּן *yes (it is so)*. Other useful words in this sentence are לֹא *no, not* and שֶׁל *of, belonging to*.

b. כָּל הַמִּשְׁפָּחָה *all the family, the entire family*. See note 22b above.

24. כַּמָּה מִזְוָדוֹת יֵשׁ לְךָ?
How many suitcases have you got?

a. כַּמָּה *how much? how many?*

b. יֵשׁ לְךָ *you have (there is to you)*. Remember Hebrew has no verb equivalent to the English verb *to have*. See note 8b.

25. שְׁתֵּי מִזְוָדוֹת גְּדוֹלוֹת וְאַרְבַּע מִזְוָדוֹת קְטַנּוֹת
Two large suitcases and four small suitcases.

a. שְׁתֵּי מִזְוָדוֹת גְּדוֹלוֹת *two large suitcases*. Note carefully that all numerals in Hebrew are placed before the noun, except the numeral *one*.

שְׁתֵּי מִזְוָדוֹת *two suitcases*
אַרְבַּע מִזְוָדוֹת *four suitcases* but
מִזְוָדָה אַחַת *one suitcase*
שָׁבוּעַ אֶחָד *one week*

b. Another very important point to remember: All adjectives in Hebrew FOLLOW and AGREE WITH the noun they describe.

מִזְוָדוֹת גְּדוֹלוֹת *large suitcases*
מוֹרֶה טוֹב *a good teacher*

26. הַאִם יֵשׁ לְךָ מַה לְהַצְהִיר?
Have you got anything to declare?
הַאִם See note 22a for the use of הַאִם.

27. לֹא, אֲדוֹנִי, אֵין לִי מַה לְהַצְהִיר
No, sir, I have nothing to declare. (I have not what to declare)

a. לֹא, אֲדוֹנִי *no, sir*

b. אֵין לִי *I have not*

This sentence contains two negative words: אֵין and לֹא

(1) אֵין is used with the present tense and is placed at the beginning of the sentence.

אֵין לִי מִזְוָדוֹת *I have no suitcases.*
אֵין מֶכֶס *There is no customs.*

(2) In spoken Hebrew, לֹא can be used with the present tense and is placed immediately before the verb.

אֲנִי לֹא רוֹצֶה אֶת הַדַּרְכּוֹן *I do not want the passport.*

Note the difference: יֵשׁ לִי *I have* (note 8b), אֵין לִי *I have not.*

28. מַה יֵּשׁ לְךָ בַּמִּזְוָדָה הַזֹּאת?
What have you got in this suitcase?

Note the usage of the Hebrew words *this, these* for masculine and feminine.

הָאִישׁ הַזֶּה (*m.*) *this man*
הָאִשָּׁה הַזֹּאת (*f.*) *this woman*

הָאֵלֶּה *these* is used for both masculine and feminine nouns (note 22c).

29. רַק חֲפָצִים אִישִׁיִּים וּבְגָדִים
Only personal effects and clothing.

a. אִישִׁיִּים *personal*, a word derived from אִישׁ *man, person*.

b. בְּגָדִים *clothing, garments,* plural of בֶּגֶד.

c. מַתָּנוֹת אֲחָדוֹת *a few gifts.* אֲחָדוֹת *ones, few (f.p.),* plural of אַחַת *one (f.)*

30\. בְּסֵדֶר, אַתָּה יָכוֹל לָצֵאת — All right, you may go out.

a. בְּסֵדֶר *in order.* This word is often used to express agreement and is equivalent to *O.K., fine, all right.*

b. לָצֵאת *to go out, to leave,* from יָצָא *go out.*

31\. תּוֹדָה רַבָּה, שָׁלוֹם — Thank you very much. Good-bye.

שָׁלוֹם *peace,* but also *hello, good-bye.* You can safely use this word for greeting on most occasions.

32\. הַדּוֹד מֹשֶׁה: שָׁלוֹם דָּוִד, בָּרוּךְ הַבָּא — Uncle Moses: Hello, David, welcome!

a. הַדּוֹד מֹשֶׁה *Uncle Moses.* In Hebrew, we use the definite article (הַ), but not in English.

b. בָּרוּךְ הַבָּא *welcome (blessed be who is coming).* It is a commonly used Biblical expression.

33\. מַה שְּׁלוֹמְךָ? — How are you? (How is your peace, welfare)?

Thus שָׁלוֹם *peace* can also mean not only *hello, hi, good-bye* (note 31) but also *welfare, well-being.* We use שָׁלוֹם for such expressions as *how are you? how is the family? etc.*

מַה שְּׁלוֹמְךָ? *how are you (m.s.)?*
מַה שְּׁלוֹמֵךְ? *how are you (f.s.)?*
מַה שְּׁלוֹם דָּוִד? *how is David?*

מַה שְּׁלוֹם הַמִּשְׁפָּחָה? *how is the family?*

The response to all these questions is usually:

טוֹב, תּוֹדָה *well, thank you* or
טוֹב מְאֹד, תּוֹדָה, *very well, thank you,* or
לֹא כָּל כָּךְ טוֹב *not so well*

34\. טוֹב מְאֹד, תּוֹדָה וּמַה שְּׁלוֹמְךָ? — Very well, thank you. And how are you?

35\. בָּרוּךְ הַשֵּׁם, תּוֹדָה — Thank God all is well, thank you. (Blessed be the Name, thank you).

בָּרוּךְ הַשֵּׁם *Blessed be the Name* (i.e. God). It is regarded religiously sacrilegious to utter the name of God in Hebrew. Such expressions as *the Name, the Master of the world* and the like are used.

36\. אֵיפֹה הַדּוֹדָה נוּרִית? — Where is Aunt Nurit?

אֵיפֹה *where?* Two other commonly used words of the same meaning are אַיֵּה and לְאָן *where? where to?*

אַיֵּה הַבַּיִת? *Where is the house?*
אֵיפֹה גָּרָה הַמִּשְׁפָּחָה? *Where does the family live?*
לְאָן אַתָּה הוֹלֵךְ? *Where are you going?*

37\. הִיא יוֹשֶׁבֶת שָׁם — She is sitting there.

38\. שָׁלוֹם דּוֹדָה נוּרִית! מַה נִּשְׁמָע? — Hello, Aunt Nurit! How are things?

מַה נִּשְׁמָע? *what is new? (what is heard?)* You can also say מַה חָדָשׁ? *what's new?*

39\. כָּל הַמִּשְׁפָּחָה פֹּה. הִנֵּה כֻּלָּם — All the family is here. Here they all are.

a. פֹּה *here.* Another word commonly used in spoken Hebrew is כָּאן *here.*

b. הִנֵּה *here is, here are.* A very useful expression.

הִנֵּה הַמִּשְׁפָּחָה *Here is the family.*
הִנֵּה הַמִּזְוָדוֹת *Here are the suitcases.*
הִנֵּה דָּוִד *Here is David.*
הִנֵּה מוֹנִית *Here is a taxi.*
הִנֵּה סַבָּל *Here is a porter.*

c. כֻּלָּם *all of them.* In Hebrew, words like שֶׁל *of,* —לְ *to, for,* commonly known as prepositions, may be used with personal pronouns *me, you, him etc.* Here we have כֻּלָּם *all of them.* We have also seen שֶׁלִּי *mine* (note 7b), לִי *to me,* לְךָ *to you (m.s.)* (note 8a). See Appendix notes 80–90.

40. בְּבַקָּשָׁה אֲדוֹנִי קַח אֶת הַמִּזְוָדוֹת שֶׁלִּי לַמּוֹנִית בַּחוּץ — Please, sir, take my suitcases to the taxi outside.

a. בְּבַקָּשָׁה *please.* Another very useful word.

b. קַח *take (m.s.).* Imperative of לָקַחַת *to take.*

Part three

41. לְאָן אֲנַחְנוּ נוֹסְעִים? — Where are we going? (To where are we travelling?)

a. נוֹסְעִים *travelling (m.p.).* In Hebrew the verb נָסַע is often used for *travel, drive, go from one place to another.*

b. לְאָן *to where?* But אֵיפֹה *where?* See note 36.

42. הִנֵּה מוֹנִית. אַתָּה פָּנוּי אֲדוֹנִי? — Here is a taxi. Are you free, sir?

פָּנוּי *free, vacant, unoccupied.*

43. בְּבַקָּשָׁה לְהִכָּנֵס — Please get in. (Please to enter.)

44. כַּמָּה עוֹלָה הַנְּסִיעָה? — What is the cost of the trip? (How much does the trip come up to?)

עוֹלָה *go up,* idiomatically it means *cost.* This verb עָלָה *go up* can also mean *to immigrate to Israel.* Thus עוֹלֶה can also mean *an immigrant.*

הוּא תַּיָּר אֲבָל אֲנִי עוֹלֶה *He is a tourist but I am an immigrant.*

45. עֶשְׂרִים לִירוֹת — Twenty pounds.

לִירָה In Israel the main currency unit is לִירָה *lira, a pound,* abbreviated as *IL* (for *Israeli Lira* or *pound*). The currency abbreviation IL precedes the amount. Thus *twenty pounds* is written IL 20.

In Israel it is not customary to pay tips to taxi drivers. It is left to the discretion of the tourist or passenger depending on the services received.

שִׁעוּר שֵׁנִי בַּמָּלוֹן

Lesson two At the Hotel

What happens

Part one

Mr. Berman talks about the Hadar Hotel in Tel-Aviv in which he is staying for a week. He describes the hotel and the comfortable rooms in which he is staying. He comments on the excellent service and describes the guests of various nationalities.

Part two

אֲרוּחַת בֹּקֶר **Breakfast**

Mrs. Berman asks the clerk where and when breakfast is served. She asks that breakfast be brought to her room and says that the children can eat in the dining hall.

בַּמַּעֲלִית **In the Lift**

Mr. Berman inquires as to the location of the lift and his rooms. The clerk directs him. Mr. and Mrs. Berman express satisfaction with their rooms.

Part three

בַּחֶדֶר **In the Room**

A conversation between Mike, who is complaining about the facilities and noise in his room, and Susan, who tries to console him.

Notes

Part one

1. בַּמָּלוֹן At the hotel. Note again the use of the Hebrew letter —בּ attached to the noun.

It can mean *in, with, at, on etc.* depending on context and English usage. —בְּ *in a*, —בַּ *in the*. Thus בְּמָלוֹן *at* A *hotel* בַּמָּלוֹן *at* THE *hotel.*

2. אֲנַחְנוּ בְּתֵל־אָבִיב We are in Tel-Aviv.

a. Here —בְּ is translated *in*, as required by context and English usage.

b. Remember, there is no Hebrew equivalent to *am, is, are*. See Lesson 1, note 2a.

c. תֵּל־אָבִיב *Tel-Aviv.* It is the largest city in Israel, with a population nearing half a million. Tel-Aviv is the commercial, industrial and tourist centre of Israel and it boasts of excellent beaches, theatres and entertainment. It is also the home of the Israel Philharmonic Orchestra.

3. אֲנַחְנוּ גָּרִים בַּמָּלוֹן הָדָר We are staying at the Hotel Hadar.

גָּרִים *living, dwelling* (*m.p.*). To form the present tense in Hebrew, use this form גָּרִים *living, dwelling,* known as the participle, with the personal pronoun *I, you, we* etc. Make sure you use the appropriate form for masculine, singular, plural etc. Thus אֲנִי גָּר *I live* i.e. *I stay* or *am staying.* הִיא גָּרָה *she lives* i.e. *she stays* or *dwells.* (See Appendix, note 29.)

4. מָלוֹן הָדָר הוּא מָלוֹן גָּדוֹל וְחָדָשׁ Hotel Hadar is a big new hotel. (A hotel, big and new)

Note carefully that מָלוֹן גָּדוֹל וְחָדָשׁ is in English *a big new hotel.* From the literal translation given here you will have noted

that the words גָּדוֹל *big* and חָדָשׁ *new*, that modify or describe the noun מָלוֹן, are always placed in Hebrew AFTER the noun. This is an important rule in Hebrew.

5. בְּמָלוֹן הָדָר יֵשׁ עֶשֶׂר קוֹמוֹת — There are ten floors in the Hotel Hadar.

a. יֵשׁ — *There are* but also *there is*. It is equivalent to the French *il y a*.
As we have already seen in Lesson 1, note 8b, the verb of possession *to have* in English does not exist in the Hebrew language. Instead of *I have* we say in Hebrew *there is to me* יֵשׁ לִי. Here are some additional examples.
יֵשׁ לִי אָח *I have a brother.*
In the negative we change יֵשׁ to אֵין *there is not, there are not.*
אֵין לִי אָח *I have no brother.* (*There is not to me a brother.*)
אֵין מוֹנִית *There is no taxi.*

b. עֶשֶׂר קוֹמוֹת — *ten floors.* עֶשֶׂר is used with feminine nouns. For the use of numbers in Hebrew see Lesson 1, notes 4b and 25a.

6. הַחֲדָרִים שֶׁלָּנוּ בְּקוֹמָה הַשְּׁמִינִית — Our rooms are on the eighth floor.

בְּקוֹמָה הַשְּׁמִינִית — *on the eighth floor*. Here —בּ is translated by *on*. See note 1 above. שְׁמִינִית *eighth* (*f.*). The word קוֹמָה *floor* is feminine since it ends in ָה (see Lesson 1, note 10) and hence the Hebrew for *eighth* is also feminine ending in ת (Lesson 1, note 12b.)

7. יֵשׁ לָנוּ שְׁנֵי חֲדָרִים צְמוּדִים — We have two connecting rooms. (There are to us two connected rooms.)

יֵשׁ לָנוּ — *We have* (*there is to us*)

8. בָּרוּךְ הַשֵּׁם, יֵשׁ מַעֲלִית בַּמָּלוֹן — Thank God, there is a lift (elevator) at the hotel.

a. בָּרוּךְ הַשֵּׁם — *Thank God* (*blessed be the Name* i.e. God) See Lesson 1, note 35.

b. מַעֲלִית — *lift, elevator,* a noun derived from עָלָה *go up.* Note also עַל *on, upon.*

9. הַמָּלוֹן נִמְצָא עַל יַד שְׂפַת הַיָּם — The hotel is located near the seashore.

a. נִמְצָא — *is located* (*is found*). You will soon find out that almost all verbs in Hebrew have three letters as a root. Here the root of the word נִמְצָא is מָצָא *find*. (For the verb in Hebrew see Grammar Appendix, note 28.)

b. שְׂפַת הַיָּם — *seashore.* Note שָׂפָה *shore*, שְׂפַת *the shore of*, הַיָּם *the sea.* Here we have two nouns together, one modified by the other. In English we normally use *of* between the two nouns. The first noun in Hebrew in such a sequence is said to be in the CONSTRUCT STATE.

10. בַּמָּלוֹן יֵשׁ בְּרֵכַת שְׂחִיָּה וּשְׁתֵּי מִסְעָדוֹת — There are a swimming pool and two restaurants at the hotel.

a. בְּרֵכַת שְׂחִיָּה — *a swimming pool* (*a pool for swimming*)

b. וּשְׁתֵּי מִסְעָדוֹת — *and two restaurants. And* in Hebrew can be וּ, וָ, וְ (See Grammar Appendix, note 91.)

שְׁתֵּי — *two (f.)*. The number *two (f.)* is שְׁתַּיִם. However, before a noun, Hebrew uses a shorter form שְׁתֵּי. Similarly שְׁנַיִם *two (m.)* becomes שְׁנֵי.

11. אֲנַחְנוּ אוֹכְלִים אֲרוּחַת בֹּקֶר בְּמָלוֹן — We eat breakfast at the hotel.

אֲנַחְנוּ אוֹכְלִים — *we eat (we eating)*. It could also mean *we are eating*. See note 3 above on the use of the present tense. Note the following:

אֲנִי אוֹכֵל, אַתָּה אוֹכֵל	*I eat, you eat,*
הוּא אוֹכֵל	*he eats,*
אֲנִי אוֹכֶלֶת, אַתְּ אוֹכֶלֶת	*I eat, you eat,*
הִיא אוֹכֶלֶת	*she eats,*
אֲנַחְנוּ אוֹכְלִים, אַתֶּם אוֹכְלִים	*we eat, you eat,*
הֵם אוֹכְלִים	*they eat,*
אֲנַחְנוּ אוֹכְלוֹת, אַתֶּן אוֹכְלוֹת	*we eat, you eat,*
הֵן אוֹכְלוֹת	*they eat.*

12. מִסָּבִיב לַמָּלוֹן יֵשׁ גִּנָּה יָפָה — There is a beautiful garden around the hotel.

a. מִסָּבִיב לַמָּלוֹן — *around the hotel*. Note in Hebrew we say *around to*.

b. גִּנָּה — *a little garden*. The usual word for *garden* is גַּן.

13. הַחֲדָרִים הֵם גְּדוֹלִים וְנוֹחִים — The rooms are big and comfortable.

a. Note in Hebrew the adjectives or words like *big*, *comfortable* take the same gender and number as the noun they describe.

Thus חֶדֶר גָּדוֹל *a big room* but חֲדָרִים גְּדוֹלִים *big rooms (rooms bigs)*.

b. וְנוֹחִים — *and comfortable (p.)*. The word נוֹחַ (*s.*) means *comfortable, pleasant, convenient* depending on context. It is derived from the verb נוּחַ *rest, be at ease*.

14. בְּכָל חֶדֶר יֵשׁ טֶלֶפוֹן וְרַדְיוֹ — In every room there is a telephone and a radio.

a. בְּכָל חֶדֶר — *in every room*. For the use of כָּל, see Lesson 1, note 22b.

b. טֶלֶפוֹן וְרַדְיוֹ — *telephone and radio*. You have no doubt easily recognized these two words. They are loan words. There are many foreign loan words used in Hebrew, especially those words used in many languages. Other such words are סְטוּדֶנְט *student* and אוּנִיבֶרְסִיטָה *university*.

15. לְכָל חֶדֶר יֵשׁ אַמְבַּטְיָה וּמִקְלַחַת — Every room has a bath and a shower.

a. לְכָל חֶדֶר יֵשׁ — *every room has (to every room there is)*. See note 5a above.

b. אַמְבַּטְיָה — *bath, bath tub*. It can also mean bathroom. The Hebrew word itself is a loan word.

16. יֵשׁ מַיִם חַמִּים וְקָרִים בְּמֶשֶׁךְ כָּל הַיּוֹם — There is hot and cold water throughout the day. (There are waters hots and colds during all the day.)

a. מַיִם חַמִּים — *hot water*. From the literal translation above you will have noticed that the

Hebrew for *hot water* appears in the plural. This is a special phenomenon in Hebrew. Some nouns appear only in the plural. Compare with English *news*, *series*, etc. Hence the adjectives and verbs used with such words must also appear in the plural.

b. כָּל הַיּוֹם — *all the day*. Remember כָּל can mean *each*, *every* כָּל יוֹם *every day* or *all*, *throughout*, *the entire day* כָּל הַיּוֹם *all the day*. See Lesson 1, note 22b.

17. יֵשׁ גַּם מִזּוּג אֲוִיר וְהַסָּקָה — There is also air conditioning and heating.

מִזּוּג אֲוִיר — *air conditioning* (*merging of air*). We have another interesting word מֶזֶג אֲוִיר *weather*.

18. הַשֵּׁרוּת בַּמָּלוֹן הוּא מְצֻיָּן — The service in the hotel is excellent.

a. שֵׁרוּת — *service*, such as *room service*. Ordinarily all Hebrew nouns ending in ת are feminine. (Lesson 1, note 12b.) The only important exceptions are בַּיִת *house* and שֵׁרוּת *service*. In both cases, the ת is part of the root of the word and not the feminine indication. Hence שֵׁרוּת מְצֻיָּן *excellent service*.

b. מְצֻיָּן — *excellent*. A frequently used word in Hebrew conversation for *excellent*, *magnificent*, *terrific* etc.

19. בַּמָּלוֹן יֵשׁ הַרְבֵּה תַּיָּרִים מֵאֲמֶרִיקָה, מֵאַנְגְּלִיָּה, מִצָּרְפַת וּמִקָּנָדָה — There are many tourists in the hotel from America, England, France and Canada.

a. הַרְבֵּה תַּיָּרִים — *many tourists*. הַרְבֵּה *many*, *much*.

b. צָרְפַת — *France*. Most names of countries are the same in Hebrew. A few exceptions are צָרְפַת *France*, סְפָרַד *Spain* and מִצְרַיִם *Egypt*.

Part two

20. סְלִיחָה, אֲדוֹנִי אֵיפֹה חֲדַר הָאֹכֶל? — Excuse me, sir, where is the dining room?

a. סְלִיחָה — *Excuse me* (*pardon*). It is also used as *I am sorry*, *forgive me*.

b. אֵיפֹה? — *where*? Other words for *where*? הֵיכָן and אַיֵּה All three forms are used in Hebrew. Remember, however, that לְאָן means *where to*?

אֵיפֹה הַחֶדֶר? *Where is the room?*
לְאָן אַתָּה הוֹלֵךְ? *Where are you going* (*to*)?

21. הִנֵּה כָּאן יָשָׁר; חֲדַר הָאֹכֶל — Here it is; the dining room is straight ahead.

a. There are several Hebrew words for *here* פֹּה and כָּאן. Note also הִנֵּה *here is*, corresponding to the French *voilà*.

b. חֲדַר הָאֹכֶל — *the dining room*

Note that חֲדַר הָאֹכֶל literally means *the room for the eating*. This usage of two nouns together has been discussed in note 9b of this lesson.

Please observe that you say חֲדַר הָאֹכֶל (*room of the dining*) for *the room for the dining*. You never add the definite article *the* (הַ) to the first noun. Other

illustrations from Part One of this lesson are: שְׂפַת הַיָּם *seashore* (note 9b) בְּרֵכַת שְׂחִיָּה *swimming pool* (note 10a) and אֲרוּחַת בֹּקֶר *breakfast* (note 11).

22. מִשָּׁעָה שְׁמוֹנֶה עַד שָׁעָה עֶשֶׂר From eight o'clock to ten o'clock.

מִשָּׁעָה שְׁמוֹנֶה *from eight o'clock (from hour eight)*

23. הָיִינוּ רוֹצִים לְקַבֵּל אֲרוּחַת בֹּקֶר בַּחֶדֶר We would like to have breakfast in the room.

a. הָיִינוּ רוֹצִים *We would like to have.* It is not regarded impolite to say in Hebrew אֲנַחְנוּ רוֹצִים *we want.* This verb רָצָה is very frequently used in Hebrew for *wish* (*v.*), desire (*v.*), *request* (*v.*) *etc.* The form הָיִינוּ רוֹצִים *we would like to have* is, however, considered more polite.

b. אֲרוּחַת בֹּקֶר *breakfast* (*the meal of morning*)
אֲרוּחַת צָהֳרַיִם *lunch* (*the meal of noon*)
אֲרוּחַת עֶרֶב *dinner, supper* (*the meal of evening*)
The main meal in Israel is *lunch.*

24. בְּסֵדֶר, גְּבֶרֶת, מָתַי? All right, madam, when?

גְּבֶרֶת *madam, lady, miss.* Often a lady is addressed with the word גְּבֶרֶת or גְּבִרְתִּי. Remember אִשָּׁה is *woman, wife.*

25. וְהַיְלָדִים? What about the children? (And the children?)

26. לֹא, הֵם יְכוֹלִים לָלֶכֶת לַחֲדַר הָאֹכֶל No, they can go to the dining room.

הֵם יְכוֹלִים לָלֶכֶת *they can go.* The Hebrew verb יָכוֹל *can* is frequently used in Hebrew for *can, may.* It is followed by the infinitive verb (i.e. the verb with *to* such as *to go, to eat etc.*) This is the same usage as in English, when two verbs are similarly used: *he wants to go, he can (to) eat.*

27. אֵיפֹה הַמַּעֲלִית? Where is the lift (elevator)?

28. שָׁם בְּצַד שְׂמֹאל There, on the left-hand side.

שְׂמֹאל *left.* The other side is *right* יָמִין.

29. בְּאֵיזוֹ קוֹמָה הַחֲדָרִים שֶׁלָּנוּ? On which floor are our rooms?

בְּאֵיזוֹ *on which?* אֵיזֶה *which?* (*m.s.*) אֵיזוֹ *which?* (*f.s.*)

30. מָה מִסְפְּרֵי הַחֲדָרִים שֶׁלָּנוּ? What are the numbers of our rooms?

מִסְפְּרֵי מִסְפָּרִים is the plural of מִסְפָּר *number* and מִסְפְּרֵי, a form which you will learn in detail later, means *the numbers of.*

31. יֹפִי שֶׁל חֲדָרִים! What lovely rooms these are!
יֹפִי שֶׁל *what lovely...!* Israeli speakers often use this expression when admiring a beautiful person, place or scenery. Often the word יֹפִי *lovely!, beauty!* is used alone.

32. הַחֶדֶר הַזֶּה מוֹצֵא חֵן בְּעֵינַי מְאֹד I like this room very much. (This room finds favour in my eyes very much.)

a. מוֹצֵא חֵן בְּעֵינַי *finds favour in my eyes*. Here you are introduced to a very common expression in Hebrew that can baffle the beginner. The verb *to like* and *to love* is expressed in Hebrew with אָהַב *love* but also מָצָא חֵן בְּעֵינֵי *find favour in the eyes of*. Example: *I like this hotel* will be in Hebrew הַמָּלוֹן הַזֶּה מוֹצֵא חֵן בְּעֵינַי *This hotel finds favour in my eyes* or simply אֲנִי אוֹהֵב אֶת הַמָּלוֹן הַזֶּה *I love this hotel*. You will often hear this expression in Hebrew.

b. מְאֹד *very, very much*. טוֹב מְאֹד *very good*.

Part three

33. אִמָּא, הַחֶדֶר הַזֶּה לֹא מוֹצֵא חֵן בְּעֵינַי — Mother, I don't like this room.

אִמָּא *Mum, mother*. The usual word for *mother* is אֵם.

34. הוּא חֶדֶר קָטָן וּבְלִי טֶלֶבִיזְיָה — It is a small room and without television.

חֶדֶר קָטָן *a small room*. Remember the adjective קָטָן *small* always comes after the noun (חֶדֶר *room*) it describes. See Lesson 1, note 25b.

35. מָה עוֹד אַתָּה רוֹצֶה? אַרְמוֹן? — What more do you want? A palace?

מָה עוֹד *What else? what more?*

36. אֲנִי רוֹצֶה חֶדֶר אַחֵר — I want another room.

אֲנִי רוֹצֶה לִהְיוֹת יַחַד עִם אַבָּא — I want to be (together) with Dad.

a. אֲנִי רוֹצֶה לִהְיוֹת *I want to be*.

b. אַבָּא *Dad, father*. The usual word for *father* is אָב. Compare note 33.

37. אִי אֶפְשָׁר לְקַבֵּל חֶדֶר אַחֵר — It is impossible to get another room.

אִי אֶפְשָׁר *impossible*. The word אִי is used before the noun to express the negative or the opposite, equivalent to the English negatives in— (*incorrect*) or im— (*impossible*) etc. Thus אֶפְשָׁר *possible*, אִי־אֶפְשָׁר *impossible*. You have now learned several negatives:

אֵין *no, not, there is not* (Lesson 1, note 27b)
לֹא *no, not*
בְּלִי *without* (Note 34 above)

38. לֵךְ לִישׁוֹן — Go to sleep.

39. לַיְלָה טוֹב, מֹתֶק — Good night, love.

a. לַיְלָה טוֹב *good night*. You may say also

בֹּקֶר טוֹב *good morning*
עֶרֶב טוֹב *good evening*

b. מֹתֶק *love*. A common expression of affection. Literally it means *sweetness* but it could serve for *sweetheart, darling*, etc., (or in this context, *love*).

בַּמִּסְעָדָה שִׁעוּר שְׁלִישִׁי

Lesson three **In the Restaurant**

What happens

Part one

Jacob Tal is hungry. He looks for a restaurant that is good but inexpensive and is happy to find one that is quite pleasant. He orders a full meal for himself and a light one for his wife, who is on a diet. He drinks wine with his meal. His son, Danny, drinks juice.

Part two

בַּמִּסְעָדָה **In the Restaurant**

Mr. Tal requests a table for four by the window. The waiter apologizes, saying that such a table is not available right now. Mr. Tal agrees to take another table.

אֲרוּחַת בֹּקֶר **Breakfast**

Danny asks his mother to prepare breakfast for him and tells her exactly what he wants to eat.

Part three

אֲרוּחַת עֶרֶב **Supper**

The Tal family is eating supper. Mrs. Tal does not eat bread because of her diet.

Notes

Part one

1. בַּמִּסְעָדָה The word מִסְעָדָה *restaurant* is derived from a Hebrew root סָעַד *to eat a meal.* Many Hebrew nouns are formed from the root of the verb by placing —מ at the beginning. Here are some nouns which appeared in previous lessons and which begin with מ.
In Lesson 1: מִשְׁפָּחָה *family*, מַתָּנָה *gift;*
In Lesson 2: מָלוֹן *hotel*, מִקְלַחַת *shower*, מִסְפָּר *number.*

2. אֲנִי רָעֵב I am hungry.

3. אֲנִי רוֹצֶה לֶאֱכֹל עַכְשָׁו אֲרוּחַת צָהֳרַיִם I want to eat lunch now.

אֲנִי רוֹצֶה לֶאֱכֹל *I want to eat.* For this common usage of רוֹצֶה see Lesson 2, note 36a.

4. בְּמִסְעָדָה טוֹבָה וְזוֹלָה at a good and cheap restaurant. Note the order of the words. Adjectives in Hebrew are always placed AFTER the noun.

5. הַמִּסְעָדָה עוֹשָׂה רֹשֶׁם נָעִים, הַכֹּל נָקִי The restaurant makes a pleasant impression. Everything is clean.

a. עָשָׂה רֹשֶׁם *to make an impression*

b. הַכֹּל נָקִי *everything is clean.* Note הַכֹּל *all, everything* is used with a singular verb.

6. דָּנִי אוֹהֵב בִּמְיֻחָד פָלָפֶל עִם טְחִינָה Danny especially likes *falafel* with *tahina.*

a. דָּנִי אוֹהֵב.... *Danny loves (likes).* ... The verb אָהַב *love* is often used in Hebrew to mean *like.*
דָּנִי אוֹהֵב אֶת מִרְיָם *Danny loves Miriam.*
דָּנִי אוֹהֵב לֶאֱכֹל *Danny likes to eat.*

b. בִּמְיֻחָד *especially.* This word is used more in Hebrew than in English. Somehow Hebrew speakers like to use this word often.

c. פָּלָפֶל *falafel*. The Israeli version of a *hot dog*. It is a very popular food made of ground and seasoned chickpeas, fried in sizzling oil. It is served in flat Arab bread as a sandwich.

d. טְחִינָה *tahina*, a Middle Eastern delicacy. It is a thick sauce made of sesame seeds and served with salads, vegetables and *falafel*.

7. אִשְׁתִּי שׁוֹמֶרֶת דִּיאֶטָה, אֲנִי לֹא — My wife is on a diet. I am not.

a. אִשְׁתִּי *my wife* from אִשָּׁה *wife*. Note also אִשְׁתְּךָ *your (m.s.) wife*, אִשְׁתּוֹ *his wife*.

b. דִּיאֶטָה *a diet*. Many foreign loan words are used in spoken Hebrew such as רַדְיוֹ *radio*, and סְטֵיק *steak*.

8. כְּמָנָה רִאשׁוֹנָה אֲנִי רוֹצֶה כָּבֵד קָצוּץ — For a first course, I want chopped liver.

9. מָנָה שְׁנִיָּה בָּשָׂר צָלוּי עִם תַּפּוּחֵי אֲדָמָה — (For) a second course—grilled meat with potatoes.

תַּפּוּחֵי אֲדָמָה *potatoes (apples of the soil)*.

10. הִיא אוֹהֶבֶת עוֹף מְבֻשָּׁל אֲבָל אֲנִי מַעֲדִיף עוֹף מְטֻגָּן — She likes boiled chicken but I prefer fried chicken.

a. מְבֻשָּׁל *cooked* i.e. *boiled*. This pattern is common in Hebrew verbs. They are known in English as past participles, but are often used as adjectives in Hebrew. The last word in this sentence מְטֻגָּן is of the same pattern.

b. אֲבָל אֲנִי מַעֲדִיף *but I prefer* or *I would rather have*. This is a useful expression in spoken Hebrew.

11. בַּאֲרוּחַת הַצָּהֳרַיִם אֲנִי שׁוֹתֶה כּוֹסִית יַיִן — At lunch, I drink a small glass of wine.

כּוֹסִית *a small glass*. The ordinary word for *glass* is כּוֹס.

12. דָּנִי אוֹהֵב לִשְׁתּוֹת מִיץ — Danny likes to drink (fruit) juice.

מִיץ is usually, but not necessarily, *orange juice*. Drinking juice with meals is quite common in Israel.

13. אַחֲרֵי הָאֲרוּחָה אֲנִי שׁוֹתֶה סֵפֶל קָפֶה שָׁחוֹר — After the meal, I drink a cup of black coffee.

Because of religious reasons, Orthodox Jews do not eat meat and milk dishes together at the same meal. Restaurants and hotels in Israel are prohibited by law to serve meat and milk together at the same meal. Hence, Mr. Tal, our speaker, drinks black coffee. See note 29 below on *Kosher*.

14. אַחֲרֵי הָאֲרוּחָה אִשְׁתִּי וַאֲנִי אוֹהֲבִים לְעַשֵּׁן וְלִקְרֹא עִתּוֹן — After the meal, my wife and I like to smoke and read a newspaper.

אִשְׁתִּי וַאֲנִי אוֹהֲבִים *my wife and I like*.

Part two

15. שָׁלוֹם, יֵשׁ שֻׁלְחָן פָּנוּי? — Good afternoon. Is there a table available?

פָּנוּי *free, unoccupied*.

16. כַּמָּה אֲנָשִׁים אַתֶּם? — How many people (are you)?

אֲנָשִׁים literally *men*. It is also used for *men* in general or *people*. For *men* as distinct from *women*, you say גְּבָרִים *males*.

Note אִישׁ *man* אֲנָשִׁים *men*
Also אִשָּׁה *woman* נָשִׁים *women*

17. אֲנִי מִצְטַעֵר, כָּרֶגַע אֵין שֻׁלְחָן פָּנוּי עַל יַד הַחַלּוֹן — I regret, at this moment there is no table available near the window.
כָּרֶגַע — *at this moment* (*like this moment*)
רֶגַע *moment* also used for *minute.*

18. כֵּן, בּוֹאוּ אִתִּי בְּבַקָּשָׁה — Yes, come with me, please.
אִתִּי — *with me.* You can also say עִמִּי *with me.*

19. אִמָּא, כְּבָר מְאֻחָר, תְּנִי לִי אֹכֶל בְּבַקָּשָׁה! — Mother, it is already late. Please give me something to eat.
a. כְּבָר מְאֻחָר — *it is already late.*
b. תְּנִי לִי אֹכֶל — *give me food*
תְּנִי לִי *give (to) me.*

20. מָה אַתָּה רוֹצֶה לֶאֱכֹל? — What do you want to eat?
More sentence patterns to remember:
מָה אַתָּה רוֹצֶה לִהְיוֹת? *What do you want to be?*
מָה אַתְּ רוֹצָה לֶאֱכֹל? *What do you (f.) want to eat?*

21. לֶחֶם מַרְגָּרִינָה וּגְבִינָה צְהֻבָּה — bread, margarine and cheese (yellow cheese)
גְּבִינָה צְהֻבָּה — *yellow cheese.* In Israel, you will hear about גְּבִינָה לְבָנָה *white cheese* i.e. *cream* or *cottage cheese* or גְּבִינָה צְהֻבָּה *yellow cheese* (i.e. a firm, hard cheese).

22. גַּם בֵּיצָה קָשָׁה — Also a hard boiled egg (hard egg). Note בֵּיצָה *an egg* but בֵּיצִים *eggs.*

23. מָה אַתָּה רוֹצֶה לִשְׁתּוֹת? — What do you want to drink?

24. אֲנִי רוֹצֶה קָקָאוֹ עִם הַרְבֵּה חָלָב וּמְעַט סֻכָּר — I want cocoa (i.e. hot chocolate) with a lot of milk and little sugar.
הַרְבֵּה — *much* (*a lot*) but also *many*

Part three

25. אֲנִי רוֹצֶה פְּרוּסַת לֶחֶם — I want a slice of bread.

26. אֵיפֹה הַחֶמְאָה? — Where is the butter?

27. הַאִם אַתְּ יְכוֹלָה לְהַעֲבִיר לִי אוֹתָהּ? — Can you pass it to me?
לְהַעֲבִיר לִי — *to pass to me*
אוֹתָהּ — *it (f.), her* referring to חֶמְאָה *butter* which is feminine in Hebrew.
Note אוֹתוֹ *it (m.), him*
אוֹתָהּ *it (f.), her*
הִנֵּה הַסֵּפֶר. דָּנִי רוֹצֶה אוֹתוֹ
Here is the book; Danny wants it. It here refers to *the book* הַסֵּפֶר (*m*).

28. הַלֶּחֶם הַשָּׁחוֹר טוֹב — The black bread is good.
Note carefully:
לֶחֶם שָׁחוֹר *black bread*
הַלֶּחֶם הַשָּׁחוֹר *the black bread*
(In Hebrew, *the bread the black*)
הַלֶּחֶם טוֹב *the bread is good*
(The words *is*, *am*, *are* are not expressed)
הַלֶּחֶם הַשָּׁחוֹר טוֹב *the black bread is good*

29. A note on the Hebrew word *Kosher*.

You may be familiar with the Hebrew word *Kosher* or כָּשֵׁר.

It means *clean* or *fit*, and thus *Kosher* food is food that has been chosen and prepared according to the Jewish dietary laws. Observant Jews do not eat or drink dairy products together with meat dishes, nor are they permitted to eat certain fish, fowl or animals listed in the Biblical Book of Leviticus as "unclean". "Clean" animals are slaughtered so as to conform with the dietary laws and are specially prepared before cooking. Most of Israel's hotels and restaurants are *kosher* under rabbinical supervision, and at such places you will not be served butter, cheese or milk during or after a meat dish.

שִׁעוּר רְבִיעִי   שִׂיחַת טֶלֶפוֹן

Lesson four   A Telephone Conversation

What happens

Part one

Mr. Tal talks about his office and his courteous secretary and about telephones in general. He often makes long-distance calls.

Part two

בַּמִּשְׂרָד   At the Office

A conversation between the secretary and Moshe Berman who wishes to speak to Mr. Tal. Mr. Tal is not at the office. The secretary gives him Mr. Tal's home telephone number.

פְּגִישָׁה   A Meeting

Daliah and Miriam are arranging to meet each other that evening to go to the cinema. Daliah is inviting Miriam this time.

Part three

שִׂיחַת חוּץ   A Long Distance Call

Mr. Tal places a long-distance call to Dr. Friedman in New York. Dr. Friedman tells Mr. Tal that he should be arriving in Tel-Aviv the following day with his wife, at 10.30 a.m.

Notes

Part one

1. שִׂיחַת טֶלֶפוֹן   A telephone conversation
   שִׂיחָה *conversation*, plural, שִׂיחוֹת *conversations* שִׂיחוֹת חוּץ *overseas calls*.

4

2. יֵשׁ לִי טֶלֶפוֹן בַּמִּשְׂרָד — I have a telephone at the office.

מִשְׂרָד — *office*. This word is also used as *ministry* or *Government Department*. Here are a few examples:

מִשְׂרַד הַחוּץ *The Foreign Office* or *Ministry of Foreign Affairs*. The word חוּץ means *outside* i.e. *foreign*.

מִשְׂרַד רֹאשׁ הַמֶּמְשָׁלָה *Prime Minister's Office* (*Ministry of the Head of the Government*).

3. הַטֶּלֶפוֹן בְּמִשְׂרָדִי מְצַלְצֵל מִן הַבֹּקֶר עַד הָעֶרֶב — The telephone rings in my office from morning to evening.

a. מְצַלְצֵל — *ringing*. Also *telephoning, making a telephone call*. הוּא מְצַלְצֵל אֶל הַמִּשְׂרָד *He telephones the office.*

b. מִן הַבֹּקֶר עַד הָעֶרֶב — *from morning to evening*. In Hebrew *from the morning to the evening*. This is a useful phrase to learn.

4. הַמַּזְכִּירָה שֶׁלִּי, אוֹרָה, עוֹנָה לַשִּׂיחוֹת — My secretary, Orah, answers the calls.

a. הַמַּזְכִּירָה — *secretary*. The word secretary in English implies *secrecy*, a person you confide in. However, in Hebrew מַזְכִּירָה, *secretary* comes from זָכַר *remember, remind*. She is apparently expected to remember everything and remind everyone of everything.

b. הַמַּזְכִּירָה שֶׁלִּי — *my secretary*. Instead of using שֶׁלִּי *of mine*, *my*, you can say מַזְכִּירָתִי Remember that ָה or ת at the end of a noun usually indicates the feminine gender. (See Grammar Appendix, Notes 20, 21, 22.)

4

c. עוֹנָה — *She answers the calls* (*She is answering to the conversations.*) You will often come across the verb עָנָה *answer*. It is like the verb רָצָה *want*. The four principal parts of verbs like עָנָה are as follows:

עוֹנֶה, עוֹנָה, עוֹנִים, עוֹנוֹת *answering*.

Note also that in Hebrew you say *answer to someone* עָנָה לְ־

5. כַּאֲשֶׁר הִיא מְרִימָה אֶת הַשְּׁפוֹפֶרֶת — When she lifts up the receiver

a. כַּאֲשֶׁר — *when*, when it does not introduce a question.

מָתַי *when*? introducing a question.

מָתַי אַתָּה הוֹלֵךְ? *When are you going?*

כַּאֲשֶׁר אַתָּה בַּמִּשְׂרָד *When you are at the office.*

b. הִיא מְרִימָה — *she lifts up.*

c. אֶת הַשְּׁפוֹפֶרֶת — *the receiver*. It really means *pipe, tube*. The word אֶת is not translated. It indicates the direct object of the verb *lift*. (See Grammar Appendix, Note 80b.)

6. הִיא שׁוֹאֶלֶת: ״מִי מְדַבֵּר בְּבַקָּשָׁה?״ — she asks: "Who is speaking, please?"

מִי מְדַבֵּר? — *Who is speaking?* The verb is דִּבֵּר *speak*. The four principal parts for *speaking*:

מְדַבֵּר מְדַבֶּרֶת, מְדַבְּרִים, מְדַבְּרוֹת,

7. חֲבֵרִי הַטּוֹב אוּרִי מְטַלְפֵן אֵלַי פַּעֲמַיִם בְּשָׁבוּעַ — My good friend, Uri, telephones me twice a week.

a. חֲבֵרִי הַטּוֹב — *My good friend*. Remember the Hebrew equivalent is *my friend, the good* (*one*).

Similarly אָחִי הַקָּטָן *my little brother* (*my brother the little*).

b. מְטַלְפֵן אֵלַי — *telephones* (*to*) *me*. You can also say מְצַלְצֵל אֵלַי See note 3a above.

c. פַּעֲמַיִם — *twice*. This ending ַיִם usually indicates the number *two* or plural of nouns that usually indicate *double* or *pairs*. This is known in Hebrew grammar as Dual. (See Grammar Appendix, Note 13).

יָד – יָדַיִם *hand* (*s*)
עַיִן – עֵינַיִם *eye* (*s*)
יוֹם – יוֹמַיִם *day*

8. הוּא פּוֹתֵחַ אֶת הַשִּׂיחָה בְּ״מַה שְּׁלוֹמְךָ?״ וְ״אֵיךְ אַתָּה מַרְגִּישׁ?״ — He opens the conversation with "How are you?" and "How do you feel?"

אֵיךְ אַתָּה מַרְגִּישׁ? — *How do you feel*? This is another way of saying *How are you*?

9. הוּא תָּמִיד מוֹסֵר דְּרִישַׁת שָׁלוֹם לְאִשְׁתִּי — He always sends regards to my wife.

a. תָּמִיד — *always*. In Hebrew you may place this word before or after the verb. תָּמִיד הוּא לוֹמֵד בָּעֶרֶב or הוּא לוֹמֵד תָּמִיד בָּעֶרֶב *He always studies in the evening.*

b. מוֹסֵר — literally: *hand over, deliver, convey, inform.*

c. דְּרִישַׁת שָׁלוֹם — *regards*

10. הוּא אוֹהֵב לְנַהֵל שִׂיחוֹת אֲרֻכּוֹת בַּטֶּלֶפוֹן — He likes to hold long conversations on the telephone.

הוּא אוֹהֵב לְנַהֵל — *He likes to conduct* i.e. *to hold.*

11. בִּתִּי הַגְּדוֹלָה תָּמִיד מְצַפָּה לְשִׂיחוֹת טֶלֶפוֹן מֵהַחֲבֵרִים שֶׁלָּהּ — My elder daughter is always expecting telephone calls from her friends.

a. בִּתִּי הַגְּדוֹלָה — *My elder daughter* (*my daughter the elder*) See note 7a above.

b. מְצַפָּה לְשִׂיחוֹת — *expecting calls* (*expecting to conversations*).

12. אֲנִי לֹא אוֹהֵב לְהִשְׁתַּמֵּשׁ בְּטֶלֶפוֹן צִבּוּרִי — I don't like using public telephones.

לְהִשְׁתַּמֵּשׁ בְּ־ — *to use, to make use of.* As you know, almost all Hebrew words have three letters as a root. Here the root is שמש. The use of הת־ before a verb indicates an action done by the doer for himself, known in English as reflexive verbs. Example: *to wash oneself, to dress oneself, to pray for oneself etc.* See Appendix note 36.

b. טֶלֶפוֹן צִבּוּרִי — *a public telephone.* צִבּוּר *public, congregation* צִבּוּרִי *public* (*adj.*)

13. אֲנִי נוֹהֵג לְהַזְמִין הַרְבֵּה שִׂיחוֹת חוּץ — I usually place many long-distance calls. (I am accustomed to order many outside conversations.)

לְהַזְמִין — *to order, to place an order.* Also *to invite.* You will be using this word very often. It is associated with זְמַן time.

הוּא רוֹצֶה לְהַזְמִין שִׂיחַת חוּץ *He wants to place a long distance call.*

הִיא רוֹצָה לְהַזְמִין אֶת חֲבֵרִי לַאֲרוּחַת עֶרֶב *She wants to invite my friend for dinner.*

14. הַתַּשְׁלוּם בְּעַד שָׁלֹשׁ הַדַּקּוֹת הָרִאשׁוֹנוֹת לְאָמֶרִיקָה הוּא אַרְבָּעִים לִירוֹת — The payment for the first three minutes to America is forty pounds.

a. הַתַּשְׁלוּם — *the payment*, from שִׁלֵּם *pay*

b. בְּעַד — *for, in exchange of* also *on behalf of*

Part two

15. מִשְׂרַד עוֹרֵךְ־דִּין טַל, שָׁלוֹם — Lawyer Tal's Office, shalom.

This is what you would expect to hear when you telephone an office or an institution. In English this will be equivalent to *Hello, this is Lawyer Tal's Office. Can I help you?*

עוֹרֵךְ־דִּין — *lawyer, attorney* (one who arranges a legal case).

16. שָׁלוֹם, מַר טַל בַּמִּשְׂרָד? — Hello, is Mr. Tal in the office?

17. רֶגַע אֶחָד, מַר בֶּרְמַן. הַמְתֵּן עַל הַקַּו בְּבַקָּשָׁה — (Just) one moment, Mr. Berman. Hold the line, please.

18. בְּסֵדֶר, תּוֹדָה — O.K., thank you. For the use of בְּסֵדֶר see Lesson 1, note 30a.

19. הַלּוֹ, אֲנִי מִצְטַעֶרֶת, מַר טַל אֵינֶנּוּ בַּמִּשְׂרָד. הוּא בְּבֵיתוֹ — Hello. I am sorry, Mr. Tal is not in the office. He is at his house.

a. הַלּוֹ — *hello*

b. אֲנִי מִצְטַעֶרֶת — *I am sorry (f.)*. A very useful expression. Note also אֲנִי מִצְטַעֵר *I am sorry (m.)*

c. אֵינֶנּוּ — *he is not*. Also אֵינוֹ . The negative word אֵין is often used in Hebrew. See Lesson 1, note 27b; Lesson 2, note 5a and Grammar Appendix, Note 76.

d. בְּבֵיתוֹ — *at his house.* בֵּיתוֹ *his house* בֵּיתִי *my house.* For the different forms of *my*, *your*, *his etc.*, see Appendix, Notes 20–22.

20. מִסְפַּר הַטֶּלֶפוֹן בְּבֵיתוֹ הוּא אַרְבַּע, שֶׁבַע, שָׁלֹשׁ, שְׁתַּיִם, אַחַת, אֶפֶס — The telephone number at his home is 473210.
Note that in Hebrew, telephone numbers, passport numbers etc. are used in the shorter feminine forms. See Grammar Appendix, Note 14.

21. לִמְסֹר לוֹ מַשֶּׁהוּ? — Shall I tell him anything? (Literally: *To inform him something?*).

22. מִסְרִי בְּבַקָּשָׁה שֶׁמֹּשֶׁה בֶּרְמַן טִלְפֵּן — Please tell (inform) him that Moshe Berman telephoned.

שֶׁמֹּשֶׁה — *that Moshe* The letter —שֶׁ at the beginning of the word is a very useful one to know. It could mean *who, which, that*. Here are some examples:
הוּא אָמַר שֶׁהוּא הוֹלֵךְ אֶל הַמָּלוֹן *He said that he is going to the hotel.*
הִנֵּה הַסֵּפֶר שֶׁאַתָּה רוֹצֶה לְהַזְמִין *Here is the book which you want to order.*

23. שָׁלוֹם דַּלְיָה, מַה נִּשְׁמָע? — Shalom, Daliah, how are things? See Lesson 1, note 38.

24. מָה אַתְּ עוֹשָׂה הָעֶרֶב? — What are you doing this evening?

25. אֵין לִי תָּכְנִית מְיֻחֶדֶת — I don't have (any) special plan.

a. תָּכְנִית — *plan.* A very useful word to remember. It also means *programme, curriculum.*

b.	מְיֻחֶדֶת.	*special* (f.) It describes תָּכְנִית *plan* which is feminine See Lesson less 1, 12b. Two other frequently used words are בִּמְיֻחָד or בְּיִחוּד *especially*.
26.	אֲנִי רוֹצָה לָלֶכֶת לְקוֹלְנוֹעַ לִרְאוֹת אֶת הַסֶּרֶט ״מִכְרוֹת הַמֶּלֶךְ שְׁלֹמֹה. בּוֹאִי אִתִּי.	I want to go to the cinema to see the film "King Solomon's Mines". Come with me.
a.	אֲנִי רוֹצָה לָלֶכֶת	*I want to go.* לָלֶכֶת *to go* from הָלַךְ *go, walk.*
b.	לִרְאוֹת	*to see* from רָאָה *see.* All verbs that end in ה have this pattern. הָיָה *be,* לִהְיוֹת *to be* (Lesson 2, note 36a.) קָנָה *buy,* לִקְנוֹת *to buy*
27.	הָיִיתִי רוֹצָה לָלֶכֶת לַהַצָּגָה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה	I would like to go to the first showing (performance).
28.	בּוֹאִי אֵלַי וְנֵלֵךְ יַחַד	Come with me and we'll go together.
	וְנֵלֵךְ	*and we shall go* from הָלַךְ go
29.	בְּסֵדֶר, לְהִתְרָאוֹת אַחֲרֵי אֲרוּחַת הָעֶרֶב	O.K. Let us see each other after supper.
	לְהִתְרָאוֹת	*to see each other* from רָאָה *see.* This is equivalent to *au revoir* or *Auf Wiedersehen.*

Part Three

30.	אֲנִי רוֹצָה לְהַזְמִין שִׂיחַת חוּץ לְנְיוּ־יוֹרְק	I wish to place a long distance call to New York.
31.	אֲנִי רוֹצָה לְדַבֵּר עִם מִשְׁפַּחַת פְרִידְמָן	I wish to speak with the Friedman family.
	מִשְׁפַּחַת	*the family of* from מִשְׁפָּחָה *family.* Similarly שִׂיחָה *conversation, talk.* שִׂיחַת *the talk of.*

See Lesson 2, note 9b and Grammar Appendix, Note 19.

32.	שִׁמְךָ, אֲדוֹנִי?	Your name, sir?
	שִׁמְךָ	*your name*, from *name.* Similarly יָד *hand,* יָדְךָ *your hand,* בִּתְּךָ *your daughter.*
33.	שָׁלוֹם יַעֲקֹב, אֲנִי מַגִּיעַ מָחָר בְּעֶשֶׂר וּשְׁלוֹשִׁים בַּבֹּקֶר	Shalom, Jacob, I am arriving tomorrow at 10.30 in the morning.
	אֲנִי מַגִּיעַ	*I am arriving (m.).* אֲנִי מַגִּיעָה *I am arriving (f.).*
34.	אַתָּה בָּא לְבַדְּךָ אוֹ עִם הַמִּשְׁפָּחָה?	Are you coming alone or with the family?
35.	אֲנִי בָּא רַק עִם אִשְׁתִּי	I am coming with my wife only.
	אִשְׁתִּי	*my wife* from אִשָּׁה *wife, a woman.* Note also אִשְׁתְּךָ *your wife,* אִשְׁתּוֹ *his wife.*

What happens

Part one

Mr. Berman is talking about the main post office in Allenby Street in Tel-Aviv. He describes the interior of the building. He says that he is sending a telegram to his friend for his birthday and that he is sending a parcel to New York by registered post.

Part two

הַדֹּאַר The Post Office

Mr. Berman tells his wife about the post office hours. She says that the post office is old and a new one ought to be built. He is pleased to hear that a new one is being built in Yehuda Halevi Street.

בַּדֹּאַר – מִשְׁלֹחַ חֲבִילוֹת At the Post Office — Sending Parcels

Mrs. Berman wants to send a package of books to New York. The clerk directs her to window six. Mrs. Berman waits in the queue and pays IL 10 to send it.

Part three

מִכְתָּבִים Letters

Mr. Berman discusses postal rates with the post office clerk. He buys stamps, an airletter and postcards.

Notes

Part one

1. הַדֹּאַר הָרָאשִׁי בְּתֵל־אָבִיב הוּא בִּרְחוֹב אַלֶּנְבִּי — The main post office in Tel-Aviv is in Allenby Street.

a. הַדֹּאַר הָרָאשִׁי — *the main post office.* Note that both words

take ־ה *the.* In English, you say *the main post office*, whereas in Hebrew *the post office the main.* This is very important to know. See also Grammar Appendix, Note 7.

b. רָאשִׁי — *main, head.* It comes from ראש *head, top.* This word is frequently used in Hebrew.

ראש הָעִיר — *the mayor* (*the head of the city*)

ראש הַמֶּמְשָׁלָה — *the prime minister* (*the head of the Government*)

ראש הַשָּׁנָה — *New Year* (*the head of the year*)

רִאשׁוֹן — *first* (*m.*)

יוֹם רִאשׁוֹן — *Sunday* (*first day*)

c. אַלֶּנְבִּי — *Allenby.* This is one of the main streets in Tel-Aviv. It is named after a famous British field marshal who was the commander of the British forces in Palestine and Syria during World War I.

2. הַדֹּאַר סָגוּר בְּשַׁבָּת — The post office is closed on Saturday.

a. סָגוּר — *closed* (*part.*).
Here סָגוּר *closed* from סָגַר *close, shut.* Similarly כָּתוּב *written,* from כָּתַב *write.* אָהוּב *loved, beloved* from אָהַב *love.*

b. בְּשַׁבָּת — *on the Sabbath.* In Hebrew we say *in Saturday etc.* for the English *on Monday, on Saturday etc.*

3. הַדֹּאַר פָּתוּחַ מִיּוֹם רִאשׁוֹן עַד יוֹם שִׁשִּׁי — The post office is open from Sunday to Friday.

a. פָּתוּחַ — *open, opened (part.)* from פָּתַח *open.* This is the same form or pattern discussed in note 2a above.

b. מִיּוֹם רִאשׁוֹן עַד יוֹם שִׁשִּׁי — *from Sunday to Friday.* This is a good time to learn the days of the week. In Hebrew we say *the first day, the second day etc.* Saturday is called *the Sabbath.*

יוֹם רִאשׁוֹן	*Sunday*
יוֹם שֵׁנִי	*Monday*
יוֹם שְׁלִישִׁי	*Tuesday*
יוֹם רְבִיעִי	*Wednesday*
יוֹם חֲמִישִׁי	*Thursday*
יוֹם שִׁשִּׁי	*Friday*
שַׁבָּת	*Saturday (the Sabbath).*

4. בְּמֶשֶׁךְ הַשָּׁבוּעַ הַדֹּאַר פָּתוּחַ מִשָּׁעָה שֶׁבַע בַּבֹּקֶר עַד שָׁעָה שְׁמוֹנֶה בָּעֶרֶב — During the week the post office is open from 7 a.m. to 8 p.m.

a. בְּמֶשֶׁךְ — *during*

b. מִשָּׁעָה שֶׁבַע בַּבֹּקֶר — *from seven a.m.* In Hebrew *a.m.* is בַּבֹּקֶר *(in the morning).* Note also the following:

עֶשֶׂר לִפְנֵי הַצָּהֳרַיִם	*ten a.m. (ten before noon)*
שָׁלשׁ אַחֲרֵי הַצָּהֳרַיִם	*three p.m. (three after noon)*
שְׁמוֹנֶה בָּעֶרֶב	*eight p.m. (eight in the evening)*

5. בְּיוֹם שִׁשִּׁי הַדֹּאַר פָּתוּחַ עַד שָׁעָה אַרְבַּע — On Friday the post office is open until four o'clock.

The Sabbath day in Israel is Saturday. However, the Sabbath commences at sunset on Friday. Government offices, public institutions, shops and other business places are closed from about 4 p.m. on Fridays.

6. הַדֹּאַר הָרָאשִׁי גָּדוֹל מְאֹד — The main post office is very big.

גָּדוֹל מְאֹד — *very big.* Note the order of words in Hebrew, *big very.* Here are some examples:

טוֹב מְאֹד	*very good*
יָפֶה מְאֹד	*very beautiful*

7. הָאוּלָם הַגָּדוֹל מָלֵא תָּמִיד אֲנָשִׁים — The big hall is always full of people.

a. אוּלָם — *hall, lobby*

b. אֲנָשִׁים — *men* from אִישׁ *man.* You remember אֲנָשִׁים *men* can be used as *people.* See L3, N16.

8. בָּאוּלָם יֵשׁ אֶשְׁנַבִּים רַבִּים — In the hall there are many counters.

אֶשְׁנַבִּים רַבִּים — *many counters*

You have so far learned two words for *many, much:* הַרְבֵּה which must be placed BEFORE the noun, e.g. הַרְבֵּה אֲנָשִׁים *many people* הַרְבֵּה שִׂיחוֹת חוּץ *many long-distance calls:* or רַבִּים *many, much (m. p.)* which is placed after the noun אֲנָשִׁים רַבִּים *many men* or *people.*

9. יֵשׁ אֶשְׁנָב מְיֻחָד לְבוּלִים, אֶשְׁנָב מְיֻחָד לַחֲבִילוֹת וְעוֹד — There is a special counter for stamps, a special counter for parcels etc.

בּוּלִים... חֲבִילוֹת — *stamps. . . .parcels.* These two words will help you to form the plural of masculine and feminine nouns.

בּוּל (m.)	—	בּוּלִים	*stamps*
חֲבִילָה (f.)	—	חֲבִילוֹת	*parcels*

Here are some words you have already learned:

Masculine Plurals	*Feminine Plurals*
בָּנִים *sons* from בֵּן	מִשְׁפָּחוֹת *families* from מִשְׁפָּחָה
אַחִים *brothers* from אָח	מִזְוָדוֹת *suitcases* from מִזְוָדָה
בְּגָדִים *garments* from בֶּגֶד	מַתָּנוֹת *gifts* from מַתָּנָה
דּוֹדִים *uncles* from דּוֹד	דּוֹדוֹת *aunts* from דּוֹדָה
דַּרְכּוֹנִים *passports* from דַּרְכּוֹן	לִירוֹת *pounds* from לִירָה
מוֹרִים *teachers (m.)* from מוֹרֶה	מוֹרוֹת *teachers (f.)* from מוֹרָה

10. לְיַד הַמָּלוֹן יֵשׁ תֵּבַת דֹּאַר — Near the hotel there is a post box.

תֵּבַת דֹּאַר — *a post box, a letter box*

11. אֲנִי נוֹהֵג לִשְׁלֹחַ אִגְּרוֹת אֲוִיר לְחוּץ לָאָרֶץ — I am accustomed to sending air letters abroad.

a. אֲנִי נוֹהֵג לִשְׁלֹחַ — *I am accustomed to send.* This is equivalent to *I usually send.*

b. אִגְּרוֹת אֲוִיר — *air letters.* The singular is אִגֶּרֶת אֲוִיר

c. חוּץ לָאָרֶץ — *abroad (outside of the country)*

12. הַיּוֹם אֲנִי שׁוֹלֵחַ מִכְתָּב בְּדֹאַר אֲוִיר — Today I am sending a letter by airmail.

a. מִכְתָּב — *a letter.* In Hebrew, the word is from כָּתַב *write.*

b. בְּדֹאַר אֲוִיר — *by airmail*

13. בּוּל שֶׁל דֹּאַר אֲוִיר עוֹלֶה יוֹתֵר מִבּוּל שֶׁל דֹּאַר רָגִיל — An airmail stamp costs more than an ordinary stamp.

Note also: כַּמָּה זֶה עוֹלֶה? *how much does it cost?*

14. אֲנִי שׁוֹלֵחַ מִבְרָק בְּרָכָה לִידִידִי לִכְבוֹד יוֹם הֻלַּדְתּוֹ — I am sending a greetings telegram to my friend for (in honour of) his birthday.

a. אֲנִי שׁוֹלֵחַ — *I am sending.* We have often used this form שׁוֹלֵחַ *sending.* It is the same as כּוֹתֵב *writing,* לוֹמֵד *learning.* When the verb ends in ח or ע, this form ends in חַ or עַ.

Examples:

אֲנִי שׁוֹלֵחַ *I am sending, I send*
אֲנִי יוֹדֵעַ *I know*
אֲנִי פּוֹתֵחַ *I open*

The main forms of these types of verbs are:

פּוֹתֵחַ פּוֹתַחַת, פּוֹתְחִים, פּוֹתְחוֹת *opening*
יוֹדֵעַ, יוֹדַעַת, יוֹדְעִים, יוֹדְעוֹת *knowing*
שׁוֹלֵחַ, שׁוֹלַחַת, שׁוֹלְחִים, שׁוֹלְחוֹת *sending*

(See also Grammar Appendix, Note 29).

b. מִבְרָק בְּרָכָה — *a greetings telegram.* As in Europe, you can send telegrams and cables or place long-distance calls at most post offices in Israel.

c. לִידִידִי — *to my friend* from יָדִיד *a close friend.* The usual word for *friend* is חָבֵר

d. יוֹם הֻלַּדְתּוֹ — *his birthday (the day of his birth).* The word הֻלֶּדֶת *birth* is from יָלַד *give birth.*

15. הַמִּבְרָק מַגִּיעַ בְּאוֹתוֹ יוֹם — The telegram arrives on the same day.

a. מַגִּיעַ — *arrives.* This word is often used in Hebrew. The main forms are:

מַגִּיעַ, מַגִּיעָה, מַגִּיעִים, מַגִּיעוֹת *arriving*

b. בְּאוֹתוֹ יוֹם *on that same day* (*in itself day*). Remember in Hebrew *in day* for English *on day*. See note 2b above. Another useful expression frequently used in Hebrew.

אוֹתוֹ יוֹם *same day*
אוֹתוֹ הָאִישׁ *the same man*
אוֹתָהּ מִשְׁפָּחָה *same family*
אוֹתָהּ הַחֲבִילָה *the same parcel*

16. אֲנִי שׁוֹלֵחַ גַּם חֲבִילָה לְנְיוּ־יוֹרְק בְּדֹאַר רָשׁוּם I am also sending a parcel to New York by registered post.

בְּדֹאַר רָשׁוּם *by registered post.* Note again the form or pattern רָשׁוּם *registered* (*part.*). See note 2a above.

Part two

17. מָרַת בֶּרְמַן: הִנֵּה הַדֹּאַר. מָתַי הוּא סָגוּר? Mrs. Berman: Here is the post office. When is it closed?

מָרַת *Mrs.* Note מַר *Mr.*
You can also say גְּבֶרֶת בֶּרְמַן *Mrs. Berman* and אֲדוֹן בֶּרְמַן *Mr. Berman.*

18. מָתַי הוּא פָּתוּחַ? When is it open?
Note פָּתוּחַ *open, opened* (*part.*).
See note 2a above.

19. בִּנְיַן הַדֹּאַר יָשָׁן, צָרִיךְ לִבְנוֹת בִּנְיָן חָדָשׁ The post office building is old. It is necessary to build a new one.

a. בִּנְיָן *building* from בָּנָה *build.* See also לִבְנוֹת *to build* from בָּנָה. See section c. of this note.

b. יָשָׁן *old, ancient* referring to things, books etc. But זָקֵן *old* for persons, living beings.
Thus: סֵפֶר יָשָׁן *an old book* but
אִישׁ זָקֵן *an old man*

c. צָרִיךְ לִבְנוֹת *It is necessary to build.*
Hebrew צָרִיךְ *need, is necessary* is a very useful word.

אֲנִי צָרִיךְ כֶּסֶף *I need money.*
חַנָּה צְרִיכָה בּוּלִים *Hannah needs stamps.*

Note also:

צָרִיךְ לִבְנוֹת *It is necessary to build*
צָרִיךְ לִהְיוֹת *It is necessary to be*

20. בֶּאֱמֶת בּוֹנִים דֹּאַר חָדָשׁ גָּדוֹל וּמוֹדֶרְנִי בִּרְחוֹב יְהוּדָה הַלֵּוִי In fact (in truth) they are building a new modern big post office in Yehuda Halevy Street.

a. בֶּאֱמֶת *in truth, in fact.* It is from אֱמֶת *truth* בֶּאֱמֶת often means *really, truly.*

b. בּוֹנִים *building.* When the subject of the verb is not given, it is equivalent to the English *they are building, it is being built.*

c. יְהוּדָה הַלֵּוִי *Yehuda Halevy.* The street is named after one of the greatest medieval Hebrew poets and theologians.

21. טוֹב מְאֹד, אֲנִי שְׂמֵחָה לִשְׁמֹעַ זֹאת Very good. I am happy to hear that.

a. אֲנִי שְׂמֵחָה *I am happy* (*f.*) אֲנִי שָׂמֵחַ *I am happy* (*m.*).

b. זֹאת *this* (*f.*). In general statements זֹאת *this* (*f.*) is used.

22. יֵשׁ שָׁם תּוֹר אָרֹךְ There is a long queue.

23. אֵין בְּרֵירָה, גְּבִרְתִּי, צָרִיךְ לַעֲמֹד בַּתּוֹר There is no choice, madam, it is necessary to stand in the queue.

a. אֵין בְּרֵירָה — *no choice*. It is equivalent to *you have no choice, there is nothing you can do about it.*

b. גְּבִרְתִּי — *my lady, madam* from גְּבֶרֶת *lady, miss.*

c. צָרִיךְ לַעֲמֹד בַּתּוֹר — *it is necessary to stand in the queue*

24. בְּדֹאַר אֲוִיר אוֹ בְּדֹאַר רָגִיל? — By airmail or by surface mail?

25. בְּסֵדֶר, זֶה עוֹלֶה עֶשֶׂר לִירוֹת — All right, that costs 10 pounds. עֶשֶׂר לִירוֹת *ten pounds* or IL 10.

Part three

26. כַּמָּה עוֹלֶה בּוּל לְאַרְצוֹת־הַבְּרִית? — How much is the postage to the United States?

a. כַּמָּה עוֹלֶה — *What does it cost?* For the use of this word עוֹלֶה, see Lesson 1 note 44.

b. לְאַרְצוֹת־הַבְּרִית — *to the United States.* In Hebrew you may use אֲמֶרִיקָה *America* or אַרְצוֹת־הַבְּרִית *United States* (*The States of the Alliance* or *Covenant*). The equivalent of the abbreviation *U.S.* is ארה״ב.

27. מָה הַהֶבְדֵּל? — What is the difference?

28. בּוּל שֶׁל דֹּאַר אֲוִיר עוֹלֶה יוֹתֵר כַּמּוּבָן — An airmail stamp is more expensive, obviously.

כַּמּוּבָן — *obviously, naturally* (*as it is understood*)

29. הִנֵּה הַבּוּלִים לְדֹאַר אֲוִיר, הָאִגֶּרֶת וְהַגְּלוּיוֹת — Here are the stamps for airmail, the air letter and the postcards.

30. מָה הַמְּחִיר שֶׁל כָּל גְּלוּיָה? — What is the price of each postcard?

כָּל גְּלוּיָה — *each postcard* but כָּל הַגְּלוּיָה *the entire postcard*. For the use of כָּל as *each* and *all, the entire* see Lesson 1, note 22b.

31. שֵׁשׁ אֲגוֹרוֹת — *Six agorot*. The Hebrew לִירָה *pound* is divided into 100 *agorot*. Each one is called אֲגוֹרָה *agora*. The word לִירָה is often abbreviated ל״י

32. שְׁתֵּי לִירוֹת וָחֵצִי. — Two and a half pounds.

שִׁעוּר שִׁשִּׁי　　בַּנְק

Lesson six　The Bank

What happens

Part one

Moshe Berman and his wife go to the bank to change foreign currency. They have a deposit account and a current account. The bank is open from 8 a.m. to 5 p.m. on weekdays but closed on Saturday. The cashier happens to be the Bermans' neighbour.

Part two

חֶשְׁבּוֹן חִסָּכוֹן　A Savings Account

Moshe Berman opens a deposit account with a thousand pounds. He will receive five per cent interest per annum. He gives his address and signs the necessary application form.

הַחְלָפַת מַטְבֵּעַ זָר　Changing Foreign Currency

Nurit goes to the bank to change fifty dollars into Israeli currency.

Part three

הַלְוָאָה　A Loan

Mr. Berman wishes to obtain a five hundred pounds loan at eight per cent interest on a short term basis.

Notes

Part one

1. אַחַר הַצָּהֳרַיִם אֲנִי וְאִשְׁתִּי הוֹלְכִים לַבַּנְק　This afternoon my wife and I are going to the bank.

   אַחַר הַצָּהֳרַיִם　*This afternoon*, abbreviated אחה״צ. Similarly לִפְנֵי הַצָּהֳרַיִם *before noon* or לפנה״צ

2. הַבַּנְק אֵינֶנּוּ רָחוֹק מִפֹּה　The bank is not far from here.

   a. אֵינֶנּוּ　*is not (m.)*. It can also mean *does not.* דָּוִד אֵינֶנּוּ הוֹלֵךְ לַבַּנְק *David is not going to the bank*, or *David does not go to the bank.* See also Appendix, Note 76.

   b. רָחוֹק מִפֹּה　*far from here.* Note רָחוֹק מִ— *far from* and קָרוֹב לְ— *near, near to.* In Hebrew you must add לְ— after קָרוֹב *near.*

   רָחוֹק מֵהַמָּלוֹן　*far from the hotel*

   קָרוֹב לַמָּלוֹן　*near the hotel*

3. הַבַּנְק פָּתוּחַ בְּמֶשֶׁךְ כָּל הַשָּׁבוּעַ　The bank is open all the week.

   כָּל הַשָּׁבוּעַ　*all the week* but כָּל שָׁבוּעַ *every week.*

4. הַבַּנְק סָגוּר בְּשַׁבָּת　The bank is closed on Saturday.

5. יֵשׁ לָנוּ חֶשְׁבּוֹן חִסָּכוֹן בַּבַּנְק　We have a savings account in the bank.

   חֶשְׁבּוֹן　*account*, but also *arithmetic, invoice, bill*

   חֶשְׁבּוֹן חִסָּכוֹן　*savings account*

6. הַבַּנְק מְשַׁלֵּם לָנוּ רִבִּית　The bank pays us interest.

   a. מְשַׁלֵּם לָנוּ　*it pays us* (*paying to us*). When the meaning implies *to*, the Hebrew uses לְ—.

   הוּא נוֹתֵן לוֹ מַתָּנָה *He gives* (*to*) *him a gift.*

   חַנָּה מוֹסֶרֶת לוֹ מִכְתָּב *Hannah hands* (*to*) *him a letter.*

   b. רִבִּית　*interest* (bank).

7. יֵשׁ לָנוּ גַּם כֶּסֶף בְּחֶשְׁבּוֹן עוֹבֵר וָשָׁב — We also have money in a current account

חֶשְׁבּוֹן עוֹבֵר וָשָׁב — *current account (going and coming account)*

8. פִּנְקָס הַהַמְחָאוֹת תָּמִיד אִתָּנוּ — We always have our cheque book with us. (the cheque book is always with us).

a. פִּנְקָס — *notebook, ledger*

b. אִתָּנוּ — *with us.* See Appendix, Note 81.

9. אֲנַחְנוּ גַּם יְכוֹלִים לְקַבֵּל הַלְוָאָה מֵהַבַּנְק — We can also obtain a loan from the bank.

a. אֲנַחְנוּ יְכוֹלִים לְקַבֵּל — *We can obtain.* In Hebrew we must use -לְ *to.* The four principal parts of *can* are:
יָכוֹל, יְכוֹלָה, יְכוֹלִים, יְכוֹלוֹת

b. לְקַבֵּל — *to receive, to obtain*

10. הַלְוָאָה לִזְמַן קָצָר אוֹ הַלְוָאָה לִזְמַן אָרֹךְ — A short term loan or a long term loan.

לִזְמַן קָצָר — *for a short time*

11. לְאִשְׁתִּי יֵשׁ עֲדַיִן כֶּסֶף אַנְגְּלִי — My wife still has English money.

a. לְאִשְׁתִּי יֵשׁ — *My wife has.* Remember Hebrew has no verb *to have.* Literally לְאִשְׁתִּי יֵשׁ *to my wife there is.* See Lesson 1, note 24b.

b. עֲדַיִן — *yet, still.*

c. כֶּסֶף אַנְגְּלִי — *English money.*
אַנְגְּלִי *English* (*m.*), also *an Englishman.*

Names of languages end in ת.
אַנְגְּלִיָּה *England* — אַנְגְּלִית *English (lang.)*
צָרְפַת *France* — צָרְפָתִית *French (lang.)*

12. הִיא הוֹלֶכֶת לַבַּנְק לְהַחֲלִיפוֹ לְכֶסֶף יִשְׂרְאֵלִי — She is going to the bank to exchange it for Israeli money.

לְהַחֲלִיפוֹ — *to change it, to exchange it.*
לְהַחֲלִיף *to change*
לְהַחֲלִיפוֹ *to change it*

13. אֲנִי הוֹלֵךְ לַבַּנְק לְהַחֲלִיף מַטְבֵּעַ זָר — I am going to the bank to change foreign currency.

מַטְבֵּעַ זָר — *foreign currency.* מַטְבֵּעַ also *coin*

14. הַפָּקִיד הַיּוֹשֵׁב בַּקֻּפָּה הוּא שָׁכֵן שֶׁלִּי — The clerk who sits in the cashier's box is my neighbour.

a. הַיּוֹשֵׁב — *who is sitting, who sits.* Before the present tense we use -הַ instead of -שֶׁ for the English *who, that, which etc.*

b. קֻפָּה — *money box, cashier's box.* Note also קֻפַּאי *cashier.*

Part two

15. אֲנִי רוֹצֶה לִפְתֹּחַ חֶשְׁבּוֹן חִסָּכוֹן — I want to open a savings account.

16. כֵּן, אֲדוֹנִי, כַּמָּה אַתָּה רוֹצֶה לְהַפְקִיד עַכְשָׁו — Yes, sir, how much do you want to deposit now?

17. מַהִי הָרִבִּית? — What is the interest rate?

18. חֲמִשָּׁה אֲחוּזִים לְשָׁנָה. מַה כְּתָבְתְּךָ בְּבַקָּשָׁה? — Five per cent per year. What's your address, please?

a. אָחוּז — *per cent, percentage*

b. לְשָׁנָה — *per year* (*to a year*)

c. מַה כְּתָבְתְּךָ? — *What is your address?* כְּתֹבֶת *address* from כָּתַב *write*

19. אֲנִי גָּר בְּתֵל־אָבִיב בִּרְחוֹב בְּיַאלִיק עֶשְׂרִים וּשְׁמוֹנֶה — I live at 28 Bialik Street, Tel-Aviv. C. N. Bialik was one of the greatest Hebrew poets in modern times.

20. בְּבַקָּשָׁה לְמַלֵּא אֶת הַטֹּפֶס הַזֶּה וְלַחְתֹּם עָלָיו — Please fill in this form and sign it.

לַחְתֹּם עָלָיו — *to sign it* (*to sign on it*).

21. הִנֵּה הַחֲתִימָה — Here is the signature.

22. הִנֵּה הַבַּנְק. מָתַי הוּא נִסְגָּר? — Here is the bank. When is it closed?

נִסְגָּר — *it is closed.* We also learned another word for *closed* סָגוּר.

23. הִנֵּה הָאֶשְׁנָב לְהַחְלָפַת מַטְבֵּעַ זָר — Here is the counter for exchanging foreign currency.

24. בִּרְצוֹנִי לְהַחֲלִיף דּוֹלָרִים לְכֶסֶף יִשְׂרְאֵלִי — I wish to exchange dollars for Israeli money.

בִּרְצוֹנִי — *I wish* (*in my wish*) from the verb רָצָה *want*. You can simply say אֲנִי רוֹצֶה *I want, I wish.*

25. מָה הַסְּכוּם? — What is the sum?

26. אֲנִי רוֹצֶה לְהַחֲלִיף חֲמִשִּׁים דּוֹלָר לְלִירוֹת יִשְׂרְאֵלִיּוֹת — I wish to exchange fifty dollars for Israeli pounds.

חֲמִשִּׁים דּוֹלָר — *fifty dollars.* The Hebrew is *fifty dollar* (not *dollars*). This is a special usage of the numbers. See Appendix, Note 14.

27. הִנֵּה הַקַּבָּלָה עַל הַסְּכוּם — Here's the receipt for the amount.

28. נָא לָגֶשֶׁת עִם הַקַּבָּלָה הַזֹּאת לַקֻּפָּה — Please go to the cashier's counter with this receipt. (Please get near with this receipt to the cashier counter).

a. לָגֶשֶׁת — *to go near*

b. הַקַּבָּלָה הַזֹּאת — *this receipt.* Note carefully:

MASCULINE

הַבַּנְק הַזֶּה *this bank*

הַבַּנְקִים הָאֵלֶּה *these banks*

הָאִישׁ הַזֶּה *this man*

הָאֲנָשִׁים הָאֵלֶּה *these men*

FEMININE

הַקַּבָּלָה הַזֹּאת *this receipt*

הַקַּבָּלוֹת הָאֵלֶּה *these receipts*

הַחֲתִימָה הַזֹּאת *this signature*

הַחֲתִימוֹת הָאֵלֶּה *these signatures*

Part three

29. אֲנִי מְבַקֵּשׁ לְדַבֵּר עִם מְנַהֵל הַבַּנְק — I would like to speak to the bank manager.

a. אֲנִי מְבַקֵּשׁ — *I request* (*I would like*) from בִּקֵּשׁ (v.) *request, ask.*

b. לְדַבֵּר *to speak*. You should be familiar with this form by now.
We had לְקַבֵּל *to receive* (note 9b above), לְמַלֵּא *to fill* (note 20 above).
See Grammar Appendix, Note 32.

c. מְנַהֵל הַבַּנְק *the manager of the bank*. The word also means *director*, *principal* (school etc).

30. הוּא עָסוּק. אוּלַי אֲנִי יָכוֹל לַעֲזוֹר לְךָ? He is busy. Can I help you?

אוּלַי אֲנִי יָכוֹל לַעֲזוֹר לְךָ? Literally: *Perhaps I can help you?* In spoken Hebrew this word אוּלַי *perhaps* is used instead of הַאִם. See Lesson 1, note 22a.

31. אַתָּה צָרִיךְ לְשַׁלֵּם רִבִּית עֲבוּר הַהַלְוָאָה You have to pay interest on the loan.

אַתָּה צָרִיךְ לְשַׁלֵּם *It is necessary for you to pay.* For the use of צָרִיךְ see Lesson 5, note 19c.

עֲבוּר *for, in exchange of.* הַסֵּפֶר הַזֶּה עֲבוּרוֹ *this book is for him.*

32. כַּמּוּבָן, אֲנִי יוֹדֵעַ שֶׁצָּרִיךְ לְשַׁלֵּם רִבִּית Naturally, I know that it is necessary to pay interest.

אֲנִי יוֹדֵעַ שֶׁצָּרִיךְ *I know that it is necessary.* For the use of —שֶׁ in the word שֶׁצָּרִיךְ see Lesson 4, note 22.

33. שְׁמוֹנָה אֲחוּזִים Eight per cent.

34. חֲמֵשׁ מֵאוֹת לִירוֹת Five hundred pounds.

שִׁעוּר שְׁבִיעִי מֶזֶג הָאֲוִיר (עוֹנוֹת הַשָּׁנָה)

Lesson seven The Weather (the seasons)

What happens

Part one

Mr. Tal says that he loves the climate in Israel. He is especially fond of the spring. He says that the summer is very hot and that people spend a lot of time on the beach during the heat waves. He describes the activities of his family during the summer. He speaks of the cool autumn and the winter which is cold and stormy.

Part two

הָאָבִיב The Spring

Mr. Tal and Danny are enjoying a beautiful spring day.
Danny and Miriam agree that spring is the most pleasant season.

בַּקַּיִץ In Summer

Miriam and Daliah complain about the summer heat. They discuss various ways of coping with the heat and finally decide to go to the seashore.

Part three

הַסְּתָו The Autumn

Mrs. Tal and her children are talking about autumn. Danny and Miriam agree that they do not like autumn.

Notes

Part one

1. מֶזֶג אֲוִיר The weather (the blending of the air)

2. עוֹנוֹת הַשָּׁנָה The seasons of the year

3. אֲנִי אוֹהֵב אֶת הָאַקְלִים הַיִּשְׂרְאֵלִי — I love the Israeli climate.
Note the similarity אַקְלִים *climate*.

4. הָאַקְלִים הַיִּשְׂרְאֵלִי נוֹחַ. מֶזֶג הָאֲוִיר נָאֶה — The Israeli climate is comfortable. The weather is nice.

a. נוֹחַ — *comfortable*, also *convenient*

b. נָאֶה — *nice, beautiful*, here *pleasant*.

5. עוֹנַת הָאָבִיב הִיא הַנְּעִימָה בְּיוֹתֵר בֵּין עוֹנוֹת הַשָּׁנָה — The spring season is the most pleasant of the seasons of the year.

a. עוֹנַת הָאָבִיב — *the spring season*, עוֹנָה *season*, עוֹנַת *the season of*.

b. הַנְּעִימָה בְּיוֹתֵר — *the most pleasant*.
Here, we learn how to say *the best*, *the most expensive* etc. This is known as the superlative degree.
Here הַנְּעִימָה בְּיוֹתֵר *the most pleasant*, is feminine because עוֹנָה *season* is feminine. You can also say הַיּוֹתֵר נְעִימָה *the most pleasant*. Note carefully:
טוֹב *good* הַטּוֹב בְּיוֹתֵר *the best* or הַיּוֹתֵר טוֹב
נָעִים *pleasant* הַנָּעִים בְּיוֹתֵר *the most pleasant* or הַיּוֹתֵר נָעִים.
See also Grammar Appendix, Note 8b.

6. הַשֶּׁמֶשׁ זוֹרַחַת אַךְ הַחֹם אֵינוֹ גָּבֹהַּ — The sun shines but the heat is not strong.

a. הַשֶּׁמֶשׁ זוֹרַחַת — *the sun shines*. It is obvious that שֶׁמֶשׁ is feminine. For the form זוֹרַחַת see Lesson 5, note 14a.

b. אַךְ — *but*, also אֲבָל.

c. הַחֹם אֵינוֹ גָּבֹהַּ — *the heat is not strong (high)*.
חֹם *heat* חַם *hot*

7. הַשָּׁמַיִם כְּחֻלִּים וְהַפְּרָחִים פּוֹרְחִים — The sky is blue and the flowers are blooming.

a. הַשָּׁמַיִם כְּחֻלִּים — *the sky is blue*. The Hebrew here is plural. The word שָׁמַיִם *sky*, *heaven* appears only in the plural. You will remember מַיִם *water* (Lesson 2, note 16a). See also Grammar Appendix, Note 12.

b. וְהַפְּרָחִים פּוֹרְחִים — *and the flowers are blooming*. Both the noun פֶּרַח *flower* and the verb פָּרַח *blossom, bloom* are from the same root.

8. הָאָבִיב הוּא זְמַן טוֹב לְטִיּוּלִים — The spring is a good time for excursions.

טִיּוּל — *excursion, walking tour*.

9. עוֹנַת הַקַּיִץ חַמָּה מְאֹד — The summer season is very hot.

10. הָאֲנָשִׁים שׁוֹתִים הַרְבֵּה, בְּיִחוּד בִּימֵי הַשָּׁרָב — People drink a lot, especially on the very hot days.

a. שׁוֹתִים — *drink (p.)*

b. בִּימֵי הַשָּׁרָב — *in the days of the heat wave*
בִּימֵי *in the days of* יוֹם *day* יָמִים *days* יְמֵי *the days of* בִּימֵי *in the days of* חֹם *heat* שָׁרָב *sizzling* or *burning heat, heat wave*.

11. לִימֵי הַשָּׁרָב קוֹרְאִים גַּם יְמֵי חַמְסִין — The days of heat wave are also called days of *Hamsin*.

a. לְיְמֵי הַשָּׁרָב קוֹרְאִים — Literally: *to the days of heat wave we call.* Hebrew קָרָא לְ—. English: *call*

b. חַמְסִין — *Hamsin, sizzling hot wind.* It is an Arabic word meaning *fifty*. It is popularly believed by the native Arabs that there are fifty such hot and trying days each year.

12. הַיְלָדִים מְבַלִּים עַל שְׂפַת הַיָּם — The children are enjoying themselves on the beach.

מְבַלִּים — *spend time, enjoy oneself*

13. מְשַׂחֲקִים בַּחוֹל וּמִתְרַחֲצִים בַּיָּם — They play in the sand and bathe in the sea.

a. מְשַׂחֲקִים — *play, are playing*

b. מִתְרַחֲצִים — *bathing, washing themselves.* The root is רָחַץ *wash.* See Grammar Appendix, Note 36.

14. בְּנִי אוֹהֵב לִשְׂחוֹת בַּבְּרֵכָה — My son loves swimming in the pool.

a. לִשְׂחוֹת — *to swim*

b. בְּרֵכָה — *pool* but בְּרָכָה *blessing, greeting*

15. בַּקַּיִץ כָּל בְּנֵי הַמִּשְׁפָּחָה שְׁזוּפִים — In the summer all the members of the family are tanned.

a. בְּנֵי הַמִּשְׁפָּחָה — *the sons of the family.* בָּנִים *sons* בְּנֵי *the sons of.*

b. שְׁזוּפִים — *tanned, sunburnt* (*p.*). The singular is שָׁזוּף *tanned* (*part.*).

16. אִשְׁתִּי קוֹנָה בְּכָל קַיִץ בֶּגֶד־יָם חָדָשׁ — My wife buys a new swimsuit every summer.

בֶּגֶד־יָם — *a garment of sea, swimsuit, bathing suit*

17. בְּעוֹנַת הַסְּתָו קָרִיר — It is cool in the autumn season.

קָרִיר — *cool.* קַר *cold* (*adj.*) and קֹר *cold* (*n.*)

18. הָעוֹנָה הַקָּרָה הִיא עוֹנַת הַחֹרֶף — The cold season is the winter season. The four seasons are אָבִיב *spring* קַיִץ *summer* סְתָו *autumn* and חֹרֶף *winter.*

19. הָרוּחַ קָרָה וְכִמְעַט כָּל יוֹם יוֹרֵד גֶּשֶׁם — The wind is cold and almost every day it rains.

a. הָרוּחַ קָרָה — *The wind is cold.* Note that רוּחַ *wind* is feminine

b. יוֹרֵד גֶּשֶׁם — *rain is falling, it is raining*

Part two

20. אֵיזֶה יוֹם יָפֶה הַיּוֹם! — What a beautiful day it is today!

a. אֵיזֶה יוֹם — *What a day!*

b. אֵיזֶה יוֹם יָפֶה — *What a beautiful day!*

21. הָאָבִיב בָּא לָאָרֶץ — Spring comes to the land. This is a somewhat poetical style.

לָאָרֶץ — *to the land*

22. הַשֶּׁמֶשׁ זוֹרַחַת, הַשָּׁמַיִם בְּהִירִים וְהַחֹם אֵינוֹ גָּבֹהַּ — The sun is shining, the sky is clear and the heat is not strong.

a. הַשָּׁמַיִם בְּהִירִים — *the sky is clear.* בָּהִיר *clear, light coloured*

b. גָּבֹהַּ — *high,* here *strong*

23. נָעִים מְאֹד בַּחוּץ It is very pleasant outside.

בַּחוּץ *outside.* We have met this word חוּץ *outside* in previous lessons. שִׂיחַת חוּץ *long-distance call* (*outside call*) חוּץ לָאָרֶץ *abroad* (*outside of the country*). Lesson 5, note 11c.

24. כֻּלָּנוּ רוֹצִים לְטַיֵּל All of us want to take an excursion.

a. כֻּלָּנוּ *all of us* from כָּל *all.* In Hebrew, words such as כָּל *all* מִן *from* עִם *with* can be used with the pronouns *me, us etc.* Thus כֻּלִּי *all of me* עִמִּי *with me* עִמָּנוּ *with us etc.*

b. לְטַיֵּל *to take an excursion, to go for a walk.* It is difficult to render this word adequately into English.

25. הַפְּרָחִים בָּאָבִיב כָּל כָּךְ יָפִים The flowers in spring are so beautiful.

כָּל כָּךְ *so, so much* כָּל כָּךְ יָפֶה *so beautiful* כָּל כָּךְ רָעֵב *so hungry* כָּל כָּךְ קַר *so cold*

26. עוֹנַת הָאָבִיב הִיא הָעוֹנָה הַיָּפָה וְהַנְּעִימָה בְּיוֹתֵר בֵּין עוֹנוֹת הַשָּׁנָה The spring season is the most beautiful and most pleasant season of the year.

בֵּין עוֹנוֹת הַשָּׁנָה *among the seasons of the year*

27. אֲנִי רוֹצָה שָׁנָה שֶׁיֵּשׁ בָּהּ עוֹנָה אַחַת–אָבִיב I want a year which has one season —spring.

עוֹנָה אַחַת *one season* (*f.*)

28. חַם הַיּוֹם It is hot today.

Note the absence of a verb.

29. אִי אֶפְשָׁר לִנְשֹׁם It is impossible to breathe.

30. כַּמָּה מַעֲלוֹת חֹם הַיּוֹם? What is the temperature today?

מַעֲלוֹת חֹם *degrees of heat, temperature*

31. אֵינִי יוֹדַעַת בְּדִיּוּק, אֲנִי חוֹשֶׁבֶת שְׁלֹשִׁים וּשְׁתַּיִם מַעֲלוֹת. זֶה אָיֹם I don't know exactly. 32 degrees I think. This is dreadful.

32. אֲנִי שׁוֹתָה מַשְׁקָאוֹת כָּל הַיּוֹם I drink all day. (I drink drinks all the day.)

מַשְׁקָאוֹת *drinks* מַשְׁקֶה *drink* (*n.*) שָׁתָה *drink* (*v.*)

33. אֵין דָּבָר, טוֹב לִשְׁתּוֹת בַּקַּיִץ It does not matter. It is good to drink in the summer.

טוֹב לִשְׁתּוֹת *it is good to drink*

This is a useful phrase to know.

טוֹב לָלֶכֶת *it is good to go*

טוֹב לִהְיוֹת *it is good to be*

34. מָה דַּעְתְּךָ עַל אָחִי? בְּיוֹם כָּזֶה הוּא הוֹלֵךְ לַיָּם What is your opinion of my brother? On a day like this he goes to the sea.

מָה דַּעְתֵּךְ? *What is your opinion?* דֵּעָה *opinion, view* from יָדַע *know.*

דַּעְתְּךָ *your* (*m.*) *opinion*

דַּעְתֵּךְ *your* (*f.*) *opinion*

Similarly שִׁמְךָ *your* (*m.*) *name*

שְׁמֵךְ *your* (*f.*) *name*

35. לְדַעְתִּי הוּא עוֹשֶׂה בְּחָכְמָה. בּוֹאִי נֵלֵךְ גַּם אֲנַחְנוּ לַיָּם In my opinion, he is acting wisely. Come (on), let's go to the sea, too.

a. לְדַעְתִּי *in my opinion* (*to my opinion*)

b. בְּחָכְמָה *wisely* (*with wisdom*)

c. בּוֹאִי נֵלֵךְ *come, let us go.* You can also say

הָבָה נֵלֵךְ *let us go*

36. איזה לכלוך! How dirty! (what a dirt!)

37. אין פלא, הרוח נושבת והעלים נושרים מהעצים No wonder! The wind is blowing and the leaves are falling from the trees.
הרוח נושבת *the wind is blowing.*

38. ברוך השם, החם של הקיץ עובר Thank God. The heat of the summer is gone.
עובר *is passing, is gone*

39. אני בכלל לא שמח I am not at all happy.
בכלל *at all*

40. מדוע? Why? Also למה? *why?* Both are used.

41. אי אפשר לשחק בחוץ בכדור־רגל It is impossible to play football outside.
לשחק בחוץ בכדור־רגל *to play outside with a football*

42. כי הכל נראה עגום Because everything seems gloomy.

a. כי *because.* Another word is מפני ש־ Miriam could have said מפני שהכל נראה עגום

b. נראה *is seen, seems, appears* from ראה *see.*

43. אני לא מסכימה, אני אוהבת את הסתו I don't agree. I love the autumn.

Lesson eight Hospital. A sick person at home

What happens

Part one

Mrs. Tal says that her son, Danny, hasn't been feeling well lately. She is taking him to the doctor today. Their appointment is for nine o'clock. The doctor examines Danny. He makes out a number of prescriptions and orders Danny to lie in bed for four days.

Part two

דני חולה Danny is ill

Danny doesn't feel well. He describes the symptoms and says he doesn't want to go to school. Mrs. Tal says she must call a doctor. Danny doesn't like doctors. He says that he is feeling well and will go to school after all.

אצל הרופא At the Doctor's

The doctor questions Danny and examines him. He tells him to stay in bed for a week and tells him to take aspirin.

Part three

תאונת דרכים A Road Accident

Miriam and Mrs. Tal see a child injured by a hit and run driver.
An ambulance arrives and the boy is taken to hospital.

Notes

Part one

1. בית חולים, חולה בבית A hospital. A sick person in the house.

a. בית חולים *hospital (a house for the ill)*
בית *a house* · בית *house of*

b. חוֹלֶה, חוֹלִים — The word חוֹלֶה can mean *a sick person, patient* or *being ill*. Thus אֲנִי חוֹלֶה *I am a sick person* or *I am ill*. The four principal parts of חָלָה *be ill* are:
חוֹלֶה, חוֹלָה, חוֹלִים, חוֹלוֹת

2. בַּזְּמַן הָאַחֲרוֹן דָּנִי אֵינוֹ מַרְגִּישׁ טוֹב — Recently Danny has not been feeling well.

a. בַּזְּמַן הָאַחֲרוֹן — *recently* (*in the last time*).

b. מַרְגִּישׁ טוֹב — *feeling well.* A useful expression to learn is אֵיךְ אַתָּה מַרְגִּישׁ? *How do you feel? How are you?*

3. אֲנִי צְרִיכָה לָקַחַת אוֹתוֹ לָרוֹפֵא הַיּוֹם — I must take him to the doctor today.

אֲנִי צְרִיכָה לָקַחַת אוֹתוֹ — *I must* (*to*) *take him.*
אוֹתוֹ *him* אוֹתָהּ *her* אוֹתָנוּ *us*

4. יֵשׁ לוֹ חֹם וְאֵין לוֹ תֵּאָבוֹן. — He has a temperature and no appetite.

a. חֹם — *temperature* (heat)

b. תֵּאָבוֹן — *appetite*. When people sit at the table to eat, you may wish them בְּתֵאָבוֹן! *with appetite*! equivalent to *enjoy your meal.*

5. כַּאֲשֶׁר אֲנִי צְרִיכָה לְבַקֵּר אֵצֶל הָרוֹפֵא — When I have to see the doctor

a. כַּאֲשֶׁר — *when,* not introducing a question. מָתַי *when?* introducing a question.

b. אֵצֶל — *by, near, at, with.* Note the following uses of this word:

אֶצְלִי *by me, near me*
אֶצְלְךָ *by you, with you*
אֶצְלוֹ *by him, near him*
אֵצֶל is equivalent to the French *chez.*

6. אֲנִי הוֹלֶכֶת מֻקְדָּם בַּבֹּקֶר — I go early in the morning.

מֻקְדָּם — *early.* Note also קֹדֶם כֹּל *first of all.*

7. דָּנִי שׂוֹנֵא לְבַקֵּר אֵצֶל רוֹפֵא — Danny hates visiting a doctor.

8. הוּא אֵינוֹ אוֹהֵב לָקַחַת תְּרוּפוֹת — He does not like taking medicine.

9. לְעִתִּים מַגִּיעַ הָרוֹפֵא מְאֻחָר לַמִּרְפָּאָה — At times, the doctor arrives late at the clinic.

a. לְעִתִּים — *at times, sometimes.* עֵת *time*

b. לַמִּרְפָּאָה — *at* (*to*) *the clinic.* This word is of the same root as רוֹפֵא *doctor* (Note 3 above). The root רָפָא *cure, heal.*

10. הוּא עוֹרֵךְ בִּקּוּרֵי בַּיִת — He makes home calls. (He conducts home visits.)

עוֹרֵךְ — This word can mean *arranging*, *making*, *doing*, *conducting* depending on the context and English usage.

11. כָּל הַחוֹלִים יוֹשְׁבִים בְּשֶׁקֶט וּמְחַכִּים בַּתּוֹר — All the patients sit quietly and wait for their turn.

a. בְּשֶׁקֶט — *quietly*, שֶׁקֶט *quiet, silence.* You will often hear or see the words שֶׁקֶט בְּבַקָּשָׁה! *Quiet, please*! שֶׁקֶט, בֵּית חוֹלִים! *Quiet*! *Hospital*!

b. וּמְחַכִּים בַּתּוֹר *and (they are) waiting for their turn.* Note חִכָּה *wait* מְחַכֶּה *waiting*
אֲנִי מְחַכֶּה *I am waiting, I wait*
הֵם מְחַכִּים *they are waiting, etc.*

12. סוֹף סוֹף בָּא הָרוֹפֵא שֶׁלָּנוּ תּוֹרֵנוּ הִגִּיעַ! At last our doctor came. It is our turn!

a. סוֹף סוֹף *at last* סוֹף *end.* For emphasis certain words are repeated in Hebrew. יוֹם יוֹם *every day.*

b. תּוֹרֵנוּ הִגִּיעַ *it is our turn (our turn arrived).*

13. הָרוֹפֵא בּוֹדֵק אֶת דָּנִי The doctor examines Danny.

14. הָרוֹפֵא רוֹשֵׁם לְדָנִי מִסְפַּר תְּרוּפוֹת The doctor prescribes a number of drugs for Danny.

a. רוֹשֵׁם *prescribing, making* or *writing note*

b. תְּרוּפוֹת *drugs, medicine*

15. דָּנִי צָרִיךְ לִשְׁכַּב בַּמִּטָּה אַרְבָּעָה יָמִים Danny must stay in bed for four days.

a. לִשְׁכַּב *to lie down, to sleep, stay in bed*

b. יָמִים *days* יוֹם *day*

16. הוּא צָרִיךְ לִישׁוֹן הַרְבֵּה וְלָנוּחַ He must sleep a lot and rest.
לִישׁוֹן *to sleep* יָשֵׁן *sleeping, being asleep*

Part two

17. אִמָּא, קַר לִי Mother, I am cold.
קַר לִי *I am cold (It is cold to me, I have cold).*

As in French, we say *I have cold.* Also חַם לִי *I am hot, I feel hot.*

18. אֲבָל הַיּוֹם לֹא קַר, לִי חַם But it is not cold today. I am hot.

19. כּוֹאֵב לִי הָרֹאשׁ וְהַגָּרוֹן. אֲנִי לֹא רוֹצֶה לָלֶכֶת לְבֵית הַסֵּפֶר My head and throat hurt. (The head and throat are painful.) I don't want to go to school.

a. כּוֹאֵב לִי *I have pain (it is painful to me)*

b. לָלֶכֶת לְבֵית הַסֵּפֶר *to go to school.* לָלֶכֶת *to go* from הָלַךְ *go, walk.*

20. שִׂים אֶת הַמַּדְחֹם בַּפֶּה Put the thermometer in your mouth.
מַדְחֹם *thermometer.* This word is made up of two words מַד *measure* and חֹם *heat.*

21. צָרִיךְ לְהַזְמִין רוֹפֵא It is necessary to call a doctor.
לְהַזְמִין *to order, to call* also *to invite* (See L. 4, n.13).

22. הָרוֹפֵא אוֹמֵר: "לִפְתֹּחַ אֶת הַפֶּה" וְשָׂם כַּפִּית בַּפֶּה The doctor says: "Open your mouth." and places a teaspoon in your mouth.

a. לִפְתֹּחַ *to open.* The infinitive can be used as a command. לָשֶׁבֶת *to sit* but also *sit!*

b. שָׂם *putting,* from שִׂים *put* (see note 20 above) Note שָׂם, שָׂמָה, שָׂמִים, שָׂמוֹת

c. כַּפִּית *teaspoon* כַּף *tablespoon*

d. פֶּה *mouth.* You now know the names of several parts of the body.

פֶּה *mouth* גָּרוֹן *throat* רֹאשׁ *head*
They are all masculine. Parts of the body that are double or more are feminine in Hebrew.
יָד *hand* עַיִן *eye* (See Grammar Appendix, Note 13).

23. אַתָּה רוֹצֶה תְּרוּפָה בִּמְקוֹם זְרִיקָה? — Do you want medicine instead of an injection?

24. אֲנִי חוֹשֵׁב שֶׁלֹּא כּוֹאֵב לִי כְּלוּם — I think I have no pain at all.

אֲנִי חוֹשֵׁב שֶׁ־ — *I think that*. This is a commonly used form.
אֲנִי רוֹאֶה שֶׁ־ *I see that...*
אֲנִי זוֹכֵר שֶׁ־ *I remember that...*

25. אֲנִי בָּרִיא. אֲנִי הוֹלֵךְ לְבֵית הַסֵּפֶר — I am well. I am going to school.

בָּרִיא — *well, healthy* בְּרִיאוּת *health*. When someone sneezes, you may wish him לִבְרִיאוּת *to health*, equivalent to the English *bless you*.

26. אֵצֶל הָרוֹפֵא — At the doctor's. Note the use of אֵצֶל *at, at the place of*.

27. מַה כּוֹאֵב לְךָ? — What ails you? (What is hurting to you?)

28. הָרֹאשׁ כּוֹאֵב לִי, הַגָּרוֹן כּוֹאֵב לִי, יֵשׁ לִי נַזֶּלֶת — My head hurts. My throat hurts, I have a head cold.

a. כּוֹאֵב לִי — *hurts me (hurting to me)*

b. נַזֶּלֶת — *nasal* or *head cold*, usually accompanied by a running nose.

29. אֵיךְ אַתָּה יָשֵׁן בַּלֵּילוֹת? — How do you sleep at night?
Note the word for *sleeping, asleep*
יָשֵׁן, יְשֵׁנָה, יְשֵׁנִים, יְשֵׁנוֹת

30. אֲנִי לֹא יָכוֹל לִישׁוֹן בַּלֵּילוֹת — I can't sleep at night.

31. אֵיךְ הַתֵּאָבוֹן? — How is your appetite?

32. פְּתַח אֶת הַפֶּה, כֵּן, הַגָּרוֹן אָדֹם — Open your mouth. (Open the mouth.) Yes, your throat is red. (Yes, the throat is red.)

33. בְּבַקָּשָׁה לִנְשֹׁם עָמֹק — Please inhale deeply.
לִנְשֹׁם *to inhale, to breathe*

34. לֹא, דָּנִי, עָלֶיךָ לִשְׁכַּב בַּמִּטָּה שְׁבוּעַ יָמִים. קַח עַכְשָׁו אַסְפִּירִין — No, Danny. You must stay in bed for a week. Take an aspirin now.

a. עָלֶיךָ — *you must (it is upon you)*

b. שְׁבוּעַ יָמִים — An expression meaning *one whole week*.

Part three

35. תְּאוּנַת דְּרָכִים — A road accident (a mishap of the roads)

36. אִמָּא, תִּרְאִי, יֶלֶד שׁוֹכֵב שָׁם פָּצוּעַ עַל הַכְּבִישׁ — Mother, look, a boy is lying down there injured on the road.

תִּרְאִי — *See! (you will see)*

37. הִנֵּה רוֹכֵב – אוֹפַנּוֹעַ בּוֹרֵחַ — There (lit. here) is a motorcyclist (rider of a motorcycle) running away.

אוֹפַנּוֹעַ — *motorcycle*. The Hebrew word is composed of two words אוֹפַן *wheel* and נוֹעַ *moving, motoring*.

38.	אֲנִי חוֹשֶׁבֶת שֶׁהַיֶּלֶד פָּצוּעַ קָשֶׁה, רַגְלוֹ שְׁבוּרָה	I think that the boy is seriously hurt. His foot is broken.
	אֲנִי חוֹשֶׁבֶת שֶׁהַיֶּלֶד	*I think that the boy...* Note —שֶׁ *that*
a.	רַגְלוֹ שְׁבוּרָה	*his foot is broken.* Note that רֶגֶל *foot* is feminine. This is one of the peculiarities of the Hebrew language. Nouns indicating double members of the body are usually feminine. Thus יָד *hand* עַיִן *eye* are feminine whereas פֶּה *mouth* רֹאשׁ *head* are masculine. (See Grammar Appendix, Note 13)
b.	שְׁבוּרָה	*broken (f.)* The principal forms are שָׁבוּר, שְׁבוּרָה, שְׁבוּרִים, שְׁבוּרוֹת
39.	צָרִיךְ לְהַעֲבִיר אֶת הַיֶּלֶד לְבֵית חוֹלִים	It is necessary to transfer the boy to the hospital.
40.	אֲנִי רוֹצָה לִקְרֹא לְעֶזְרָה רִאשׁוֹנָה	I wish to call for first aid.
a.	לִקְרֹא	*to call.* The same word is used for *to read.*
b.	עֶזְרָה רִאשׁוֹנָה	*first aid* from עֶזְרָה *help*
41.	טַלְפְּנִי לְמָגֵן דָּוִד אָדֹם	Telephone the Red Cross (Telephone the Red Shield of David). This is the Shield Israel first aid organisation. It has first aid stations in all the cities and in the large villages.
42.	הִנֵּה אָח בָּא	Here comes a male attendant.
43.	הוּא מַגִּישׁ עֶזְרָה רִאשׁוֹנָה לַיֶּלֶד	He gives (extends) first aid to the boy.
44.	אֲנִי מְקַוֶּה שֶׁמַּצַּב הַיֶּלֶד לֹא מְסֻכָּן	I hope that the boy's condition is not dangerous.

What happens

Part one

Miriam talks about herself and her brother, Danny. She gets up every morning at seven o'clock. Danny wakes up later and studies the calendar. His birthday is in another two months and Miriam is planning to buy him a watch.

Part two

שִׂיחָה עַל נְסִיעָה לִירוּשָׁלַיִם וְעַל טִיּוּל   Conversation about a trip to Jerusalem and a Walk

Danny asks his cousin,Sarah,if she will go for a walk with him. After consulting her diary, she agrees to see him on Sunday.

מִרְיָם בּוֹחֶנֶת אֶת דָּנִי בְּחֶשְׁבּוֹן   Miriam tests Danny in Arithmetic

Miriam asks Danny questions in addition, subtraction, multiplication and division. He answers them all, and she tells him that he is a genius in arithmetic.

Part three

הַשָּׁעוֹן שֶׁלִּי   My Watch

Danny's teacher congratulates him on his new self-winding watch. The teacher tests Danny to see whether he can tell the time and he passes the test with flying colours.

Notes

Part one

1.	זְמַן, מָה הַשָּׁעָה? מִסְפָּרִים	Time, what's the time? Numbers
	מָה הַשָּׁעָה?	*What's the time?* (*What is the hour?*)

2. בְּכָל בֹּקֶר אֲנִי קָמָה בְּשָׁעָה שֶׁבַע — Every morning I get up at seven.

a. בְּכָל בֹּקֶר — *every morning* but כָּל הַבֹּקֶר *the entire morning*. See Lesson 1, note 22b.

b. קָמָה — *get up, is getting up (f.)* The principal parts are: קָם, קָמָה, קָמִים, קָמוֹת

c. בְּשֶׁבַע — *at seven (in seven)*

3. אִמִּי מְבָרֶכֶת אוֹתִי בְּ״בֹּקֶר טוֹב״ — My mother greets me with "Good morning".

a. מְבָרֶכֶת — *greets, is greeting (f.)*. This word can mean *bless* or *greet.*

b. בֹּקֶר טוֹב — *good morning*. Note also עֶרֶב טוֹב *good evening* לַיְלָה טוֹב *good night*

4. בְּשָׁעָה שֶׁבַע וּשְׁלֹשִׁים אֲנִי כְּבָר בַּדֶּרֶךְ לְבֵית הַסֵּפֶר — At seven thirty, I am already on the way to school.

a. שֶׁבַע וּשְׁלֹשִׁים — *seven thirty, half past seven*

b. בַּדֶּרֶךְ — *on the way (in the way)*. You must remember that Hebrew has fewer prepositions, i.e. words like *on, in, through etc.* The English equivalent depends on context and usage.

5. אָחִי דָּנִי מִתְעוֹרֵר יוֹתֵר מְאֻחָר, הוּא קָם בְּשָׁעָה שֶׁבַע וָרֶבַע — My brother Danny wakes up later. He gets up at a quarter past seven.

a. מִתְעוֹרֵר — *wakes up*. Note the use of —הִתְ indicating a reflexive action or an action done by oneself or for oneself. Here it means *he gets up by himself*, i.e. *he wakes up.*

b. יוֹתֵר מְאֻחָר — *later* מְאֻחָר *late*

This is an important usage in Hebrew known as the comparative degree. See Grammar Appendix, Note 8a. Also, study the following carefully:

דָּוִד טוֹב *David is good.*

דָּוִד טוֹב יוֹתֵר מִמַּיְק *David is better than Mike.*

חַנָּה יָפָה *Hannah is beautiful.*

חַנָּה יוֹתֵר יָפָה מִסּוּזַן *Hannah is more beautiful than Susan.*

c. שֶׁבַע וָרֶבַע — *quarter past seven (seven and a quarter)*. It is not difficult to tell the time in Hebrew. Here are some illustrations:

הַשָּׁעָה שֶׁבַע *It is seven. (The hour is seven.)*

הַשָּׁעָה שֶׁבַע וָרֶבַע *It is a quarter past seven.*

שֶׁבַע וְעֶשְׂרִים *twenty past seven*

שֶׁבַע וּשְׁלֹשִׁים *seven-thirty*

שֶׁבַע וָחֵצִי *half past seven*

רֶבַע לִשְׁמוֹנֶה *quarter to eight*

6. הוּא נִגָּשׁ אֶל לוּחַ הַשָּׁנָה — He goes to the calendar. (He draws near to the calendar.)

לוּחַ — *table* (e.g. *timetable*). It also means *board, blackboard.* לוּחַ הַשָּׁנָה *the table of the year* or *the calendar*

7. הוּא קוֹרֵא אֵיזֶה יוֹם הַיּוֹם בַּחֹדֶשׁ — He reads which day of the month it is today. (He reads which day is today in the month.)

הַיּוֹם — *the day, today*

8. דָּנִי יוֹדֵעַ שֶׁשִּׁבְעָה יָמִים הֵם שָׁבוּעַ אֶחָד — Danny knows that seven days make one week.

שִׁבְעָה יָמִים הֵם שָׁבוּעַ אֶחָד — *seven days make (they are) one week.* Note that שִׁבְעָה *seven* and שָׁבוּעַ *week* are of the same root שבע.

9. שְׁנֵים עָשָׂר חֳדָשִׁים הֵם שָׁנָה אַחַת — Twelve months are one year.

10. יוֹם הַהֻלֶּדֶת שֶׁל דָּנִי חָל בְּעוֹד חָדְשַׁיִם, בְּסוֹף אוֹקְטוֹבֶּר — Danny's birthday is in two months, at the end of October.

a. יוֹם הֻלֶּדֶת — *birthday (a day of birth)*

b. בְּעוֹד חָדְשַׁיִם — *in two months.* בְּעוֹד *in yet* חָדְשַׁיִם *two months.* The ending indicates *two* or *double*, and is known as the Dual. See also Lesson 4, note 7c. Note also יוֹמַיִם *two days* from יוֹם *day* and שְׁבוּעַיִם *two weeks* from שָׁבוּעַ *week.*

11. לְפִי הַלּוּחַ הָעִבְרִי בְּשַׁבָּת כ׳ בַּאֲדָר — According to the Hebrew calendar it is on Shabbat, (Saturday) 20th Adar. The Hebrew calendar is a lunar one. Most official dates are given in the Gregorian and the Jewish calendars.

כ׳ בַּאֲדָר — 20*th of Adar.* Hebrew letters have numerical values. א is *one*, ב is *two etc.* See Grammar Appendix Note 1. For the names of the Hebrew months and their corresponding English month, see Grammar Appendix, Note 17.

12. אֲנִי קוֹנָה לוֹ שָׁעוֹן בְּמַתָּנָה — I am buying him a watch as a present.

a. אֲנִי קוֹנָה לוֹ — *I buy for him*

b. שָׁעוֹן — *watch.* Note that in Hebrew, *watch* is from the same word as שָׁעָה *hour.*

c. בְּמַתָּנָה — *as a gift (in a gift)*

13. עַכְשָׁו הוּא לוֹמֵד בְּבֵית הַסֵּפֶר עַל הַשָּׁעוֹן — Now he is learning about the watch at school.

עַל הַשָּׁעוֹן — *about the watch (on the watch).* The word עַל *on* is also used for *about* as in English.

14. אָבִי חוֹזֵר מֵהָעֲבוֹדָה בְּשָׁעָה שֵׁשׁ בָּעֶרֶב — My father returns from work at six in the evening.

שֵׁשׁ בָּעֶרֶב — 6 *p.m.* For the Hebrew usage of *a.m.* and *p.m.* see Lesson 5, note 4b.

15. אֲנִי הוֹלֶכֶת לִישׁוֹן מֻקְדָּם בְּכָל לַיְלָה בְּרֶבַע לְתֵשַׁע — I go to sleep early every night at a quarter to nine.

a. בְּכָל לַיְלָה — *every night* but כָּל הַלַּיְלָה *the whole night, throughout the night*

b. בְּרֶבַע לְתֵשַׁע — *at a quarter to nine.* You can also say בְּרֶבַע לִפְנֵי תֵּשַׁע

16. אִמִּי מְבָרֶכֶת אוֹתָנוּ בְּ״לַיְלָה טוֹב וַחֲלוֹמוֹת נְעִימִים״ — My mother wishes us "Good night and pleasant dreams".

אוֹתָנוּ — *us.* We have already learned *me* אוֹתִי *him* אוֹתוֹ and *her* אוֹתָהּ.

Part two

17.	מָה הַתַּאֲרִיךְ הַיּוֹם?	What is the date today?
18.	הַאִם אַתְּ פְּנוּיָה בַּשָּׁבוּעַ הַבָּא?	Are you free next week?
a.	הַאִם אַתְּ פְּנוּיָה	*are you free*? Remember הַאִם is not translated, it introduces a question. See Lesson 1, note 22a.
	פְּנוּיָה	*free, not busy* also *not occupied*
b.	בַּשָּׁבוּעַ הַבָּא	*next week* (*in the week that comes*)
19.	הָבָה נִרְאֶה – אֵיזֶה יוֹם הַיּוֹם?	Let's see! What day is it today?
	הָבָה נִרְאֶה	*let's see*! A useful expression to know.
20.	הַיּוֹם יוֹם שִׁשִּׁי	Today is Friday. (Today is the sixth day.) For the days of the week see Lesson 5, note 3b.
21.	הַאִם אַתְּ רוֹצָה לָלֶכֶת לְטַיֵּל בְּיוֹם רִאשׁוֹן?	Do you want to come for a walk on Sunday?
22.	בְּרָצוֹן רַב, בְּאֵיזוֹ שָׁעָה?	Willingly (with great pleasure), at what time? Remember this useful expression בְּרָצוֹן רַב *willingly*.
23.	בְּחָמֵשׁ	At five
24.	מִרְיָם בּוֹחֶנֶת אֶת דָּנִי בְּחֶשְׁבּוֹן	Miriam tests Danny in arithmetic.
	חֶשְׁבּוֹן	*accounts, arithmetic*. Also *invoice*.

25.	כַּמָּה הֵם תֵּשַׁע וְעוֹד חָמֵשׁ?	How much are nine and five?
	וְעוֹד	*and more, plus.*
26.	תֵּשַׁע וְעוֹד חָמֵשׁ הֵם אַרְבַּע – עֶשְׂרֵה	Nine plus five are fourteen.
27.	וְכַמָּה הֵם שְׁלֹשׁ־עֶשְׂרֵה פָּחוֹת שֶׁבַע?	And how much is thirteen minus seven? Note the word פָּחוֹת *minus, less.*
28.	יָפֶה מְאֹד. וְכַמָּה הֵם אַרְבַּע כָּפוּל אַרְבַּע?	Very good (nice). And how much is four times four?
	אַרְבַּע כָּפוּל אַרְבַּע	*four times* (*multiplied by*) *four*
29.	זֶה קָשֶׁה. רֶגַע! אַרְבַּע כָּפוּל אַרְבַּע הֵם שְׁמֹנֶה	This is difficult. Just a moment! Four times four are eight.
	רֶגַע	*a moment*, also used for *a minute*. Note also רֶגַע אֶחָד בְּבַקָּשָׁה *one moment please.* Of course, Danny made a mistake, but he eventually corrected his mistake.
30.	טוֹב מְאֹד! וְכַמָּה זֶה שְׁמוֹנִים לְחַלֵּק לִשְׁמֹנָה?	Very good. And how much is eighty divided by eight?
31.	אַתָּה מַמָּשׁ גָּאוֹן בְּחֶשְׁבּוֹן	You are really a genius in arithmetic.

Part three

32.	הַשָּׁעוֹן שֶׁלִּי	My watch. The Hebrew word שָׁעוֹן is used for both *watch* and *clock*.
33.	יֵשׁ לִי שָׁעוֹן חָדָשׁ	I have a new watch.

34.	תִּתְחַדֵּשׁ!	Literally: Renew yourself. It is a congratulatory phrase said to someone wearing a new garment. It has no equivalent in English.
35.	הַשָּׁעוֹן שֶׁלִּי הוּא שָׁעוֹן טוֹב, אֵין צֹרֶךְ לְכַוֵּן אוֹתוֹ	My watch is a good watch. There is no need to wind it.
a.	אֵין צֹרֶךְ	*There is no need*
b.	לְכַוֵּן	*to wind,* also *to direct*
36.	יֵשׁ לָךְ מַזָּל, אֲנִי לִפְעָמִים שׁוֹכַחַת לְכַוֵּן אֶת שְׁעוֹנִי וְלָכֵן הוּא פַּעַם מְפַגֵּר וּפַעַם מְמַהֵר	You are lucky. Sometimes I forget to wind my watch and therefore at times it is slow and at times it is fast.
a.	מַזָּל	*luck* מַזָּל טוֹב *good luck* or *congratulations*!
b.	וְלָכֵן	*and therefore*
c.	פַּעַם	*once, one time* פְּעָמִים *times, twice* לִפְעָמִים *sometimes.*
37.	גַּם הַשָּׁעוֹן שֶׁל אֲחוֹתִי אֵינוֹ מְדַיֵּק וְיֵשׁ לָהּ בְּעָיוֹת	Also, my sister's watch is not accurate and she has problems.
38.	וְכַמָּה דַּקּוֹת יֵשׁ בְּשָׁעָה?	And how many minutes are there in an hour?

שִׁעוּר עֲשִׂירִי בַּחֲנוּת כָּל־בּוֹ

Lesson ten In a Department Store

What happens

Part one

Mrs. Tal and Miriam are going shopping at one of the big department stores. They buy a skirt, an evening dress and two pairs of nylon stockings. Danny and Mr. Tal stay at home. They do not like shopping.

Part two

מְכִירָה כְּלָלִית **General Sale**

Mrs. Tal wants to buy a red trouser suit for her daughter. She and Miriam find one but it costs IL 100.

מַתָּנָה לְבַעֲלִי **A Present for my Husband**

Mrs. Tal enters a store to buy a birthday present for her husband. She thinks he will be thrilled to receive a set of handkerchiefs.

Part three

בַּחֲנוּת אֲבִיזָרִים לִגְבָרִים **At the Mens' Clothes Shop**

Mr. Tal goes shopping and buys some handkerchiefs, gloves and a coat. The salesman will send the purchases to Mr. Tal's house and, of course, the bill too.

Notes

Part one

1.	בַּחֲנוּת כָּל־בּוֹ	At the department store
	חֲנוּת כָּל־בּוֹ	Literally: *a store with everything in it*
2.	הַיּוֹם מִרְיָם וַאֲנִי הוֹלְכוֹת לַעֲרֹךְ קְנִיּוֹת	Today Miriam and I are going shopping.

	לַעֲרֹךְ קְנִיּוֹת	*to do shopping (to conduct shopping)*
3.	אָנוּ לֹא לוֹקְחוֹת אִתָּנוּ אֶת דָּנִי	We're not taking Danny with us.
	אָנוּ	*we*, same as אֲנַחְנוּ
4.	הוּא אוֹמֵר שֶׁקָּשֶׁה לִקְנוֹת עִם נָשִׁים	He says that it's hard to go shopping with women.
	הוּא אוֹמֵר שֶׁקָּשֶׁה	*he says that it is difficult*
5.	הַנָּשִׁים מִסְתּוֹבְבוֹת שָׁעוֹת אַךְ קוֹנוֹת מְעַט מְאֹד	The women walk around for hours but they buy very little.
	מִסְתּוֹבְבוֹת	*they (f.) walk around*
6.	אֲנִי לִפְעָמִים מִסְתּוֹבֶבֶת בַּחֲנֻיּוֹת כָּל הַיּוֹם, אַךְ לֹא קוֹנָה דָּבָר	I sometimes walk around all day in the stores, but I don't buy a thing.
a.	בַּחֲנֻיּוֹת	*in the shops, in the stores* Note חֲנֻיּוֹת *stores* from *store* חֲנוּת.
b.	כָּל הַיּוֹם	*the whole day, all the day* but כָּל יוֹם *every day*
c.	אַךְ	*but*, another word is אֲבָל
d.	לֹא קוֹנָה דָּבָר	*(she) buys nothing.* לֹא with דָּבָר means *nothing*.
7.	הַצְּבָעִים הָאֲהוּבִים עָלַי הֵם: כָּחֹל בָּהִיר, צָהֹב וְיָרֹק כֵּהֶה	My favourite colours are light blue, yellow, and dark green.
a.	הַצְּבָעִים הָאֲהוּבִים עָלַי	*my favourite colours*
b.	בָּהִיר...כֵּהֶה	*light. . .dark* in reference to colours
8.	הַצֶּבַע הוֹלֵם אוֹתָהּ מְאֹד	The colour suits her very well.

9.	אֲנִי רוֹצָה לִקְנוֹת לָהּ שִׂמְלָה יָפָה לְפִי הָאָפְנָה הַחֲדִישָׁה	I want to buy her a nice dress in the latest fashion.
	לְפִי הָאָפְנָה הַחֲדִישָׁה	*according to the modern fashion*
	חֲלִיפַת מִכְנָסַיִם	*a trouser suit*
10.	אֲנַחְנוּ נוֹסְעוֹת לִרְחוֹב דִּיזֶנְגּוֹף	We are going to Dizengoff Street.
	רְחוֹב דִּיזֶנְגּוֹף	*Dizengoff Street.* This street is named after the first mayor of Tel-Aviv. It is a busy shopping street during the day. In the evenings and late into the night its famous pavement cafés and restaurants are crowded with people, young and old. One or two cafés in this street are the favourite haunts of actors, artists and writers.
11.	אֲנַחְנוּ נִכְנָסוֹת לַחֲנוּת כָּל־בּוֹ	We are entering the department store.
	אֲנַחְנוּ נִכְנָסוֹת	*we enter (f.).*
12.	מִרְיָם מוֹדֶדֶת חֲצָאִית צֶמֶר שְׁחוֹרָה וְקוֹנָה אוֹתָהּ	Miriam tries on a black wool skirt and buys it.
	חֲצָאִית	*skirt.* This Hebrew word is associated with חֲצִי *half.*
13.	הִיא קוֹנָה גַּם שְׁנֵי זוּגוֹת גַּרְבֵּי נַיְלוֹן וְשִׂמְלַת עֶרֶב לְבָנָה	She also buys two pairs of nylon stockings and a white formal dress.
a.	שְׁנֵי זוּגוֹת גַּרְבֵּי נַיְלוֹן	*two pairs of nylon stockings.* Note גַּרְבֵּי נַיְלוֹן *stockings of nylon*
b.	שִׂמְלַת עֶרֶב	*formal (evening) dress*
14.	אֲנַחְנוּ יוֹצְאוֹת מֵהַחֲנוּת עִם הַרְבֵּה חֲבִילוֹת וְחוֹזְרוֹת הַבַּיְתָה	We leave the store with a lot of packages and return home.
	וְחוֹזְרוֹת הַבַּיְתָה	*and return home.* הַבַּיְתָה *home.* You can also say אֶל הַבַּיִת *to the house.*

Part two

15. מְכִירָה כְּלָלִית

General sale

16. אֲנִי רוֹצָה לִקְנוֹת לְבִתִּי
חֲלִיפַת מִכְנָסַיִם בְּצֶבַע
אָדֹם מִבַּד טוֹב

I want to buy a red trouser suit of good material for my daughter.

17. הַחֲלִיפָה הַזֹּאת מוֹצֵאת
חֵן בְּעֵינַי, כַּמָּה הִיא עוֹלָה?

I like this suit, how much does it cost?

a. מוֹצֵאת חֵן בְּעֵינַי — *I like it (it finds favour in my eyes).*

b. כַּמָּה הִיא עוֹלָה? — *how much does it cost?* Remember this useful question.

18. הִיא לֹא יְקָרָה כִּי הַשָּׁבוּעַ
יֵשׁ לָנוּ מְכִירָה כְּלָלִית.
הַחֲלִיפָה עוֹלָה מֵאָה לִירוֹת

It's not expensive because we're having a general sale this week. The suit costs 100 pounds.

19. הִיא גַּם לֹא זוֹלָה

It (f.) is not cheap either.
Study the following carefully.

הִיא לֹא יְקָרָה. הִיא גַּם לֹא זוֹלָה

It (f.) is not expensive. It is not cheap either.

Hebrew uses גַּם *also* after a negative meaning *either*, as in the above sentence.

20. אֲנִי רוֹצָה לִקְנוֹת מַשֶּׁהוּ
לְבַעֲלִי לְיוֹם הֻלַּדְתּוֹ

I want to buy something for my husband for his birthday.

מַשֶּׁהוּ לְבַעֲלִי — *something for my husband.* Note מַשֶּׁהוּ is composed of מַה + שֶׁ + הוּא *what that is*, i.e. *something*.

21. יֵשׁ לָנוּ בֶּגֶד־יָם יָפֶה בִּשְׁבִילוֹ

We have nice swimming trunks for him.

בִּשְׁבִילוֹ — *for him.* See Grammar Appendix, Notes 80–90.

22. אוּלַי עֲנִיבָה יָפָה?

Perhaps a nice tie?

23. אִם כֵּן, אוּלַי מִמְחָטוֹת?

If so, what about handkerchiefs?

אִם כֵּן — *if so*

מִמְחָטוֹת — *handkerchiefs*, also מִטְפָּחוֹת.

24. אוֹ! זֶה רַעְיוֹן לֹא רַע,
לְבַעֲלִי אֵין אַף פַּעַם דֵּי
מִמְחָטוֹת

Oh, that's not a bad idea, my husband never has enough handkerchiefs.

a. רַעְיוֹן לֹא רַע — *not a bad idea.* Learn this expression.

b. אֵין אַף פַּעַם דֵּי מִמְחָטוֹת — *there are never enough handkerchiefs*

Part three

25. בַּחֲנוּת לִגְבָרִים

At the men's shop

26. כַּמָּה עוֹלוֹת הַמִּמְחָטוֹת
הָאֵלֶּה?

How much do these handkerchiefs cost?

27. תֵּן לִי חֲצִי תְּרֵיסָר בְּבַקָּשָׁה.
כַּמָּה עוֹלוֹת הַכְּפָפוֹת הָאֵלֶּה?

Give me half a dozen, please. How much are these gloves?

תְּרֵיסָר — *a dozen.*

28. הַאִם הַכְּפָפוֹת הָאֵלֶּה
מֵאֵיכוּת טוֹבָה?

Are these gloves of good quality?

מֵאֵיכוּת טוֹבָה — *of good quality* אֵיכוּת *quality* from אֵיךְ *how*

29. בְּוַדַּאי, אֲדוֹנִי, אַתָּה לֹא
תִּמְצָא מַשֶּׁהוּ יוֹתֵר טוֹב

Certainly, sir, you won't find anything better.

יוֹתֵר טוֹב — *better*

30. בְּסֵדֶר, תֵּן לִי אוֹתָן.
מָה הַמְּחִיר שֶׁל הַמְּעִיל הַזֶּה?

Fine, give them to me. What's the price of this jacket?

תֵּן לִי אוֹתָן — *give them (f.) to me*

אוֹתָן — *them (f.)* referring to *the gloves* כְּפָפוֹת.

31. מָאתַיִם שִׁבְעִים וְחָמֵשׁ לִירוֹת אֲדוֹנִי — Two hundred and seventy-five pounds, sir.

32. זֶה נִרְאֶה יָפֶה מְאֹד עָלֶיךָ — It looks well on you.

33. אַתָּה רוֹצֶה לָקַחַת אוֹתוֹ אִתְּךָ? — Do you want to take it with you?

לָקַחַת אוֹתוֹ אִתְּךָ — *to take it with you.* For the use of אוֹתוֹ *it* (m.) and אִתְּךָ *with you (m.)*, see Lesson 8, note 3.

34. אֲנִי יָכוֹל לִשְׁלֹחַ אוֹתוֹ אֵלֶיךָ הַבַּיְתָה הַיּוֹם אַחֲרֵי הַצָּהֳרַיִם עִם הַחֶשְׁבּוֹן — I can send it home to you with the bill this afternoon.

a. לִשְׁלֹחַ אוֹתוֹ אֵלֶיךָ — *to send it to you*

b. הַיּוֹם אַחֲרֵי הַצָּהֳרַיִם — *this afternoon (today afternoon)*

c. הַחֶשְׁבּוֹן — *the invoice, the bill.*

שִׁעוּר אַחַד־עָשָׂר — קְנִיּוֹת

Lesson eleven — Shopping

What happens

Part one

Mrs. Tal and Miriam go shopping and meet Mrs. Fogel, who is angry because she couldn't find a dress in any of the shops. Mrs. Tal and Miriam enter a shoe shop in which there is a sale. Miriam chooses a black leather pair.

They return home and Mrs. Tal comments that, as usual, she didn't buy a dress for herself.

Part two

שְׂפָתוֹן Lipstick

Mrs. Tal wants to buy lipstick. The saleslady offers her several shades and eventually she buys a dark pink one. Mrs. Tal pays five pounds and another ten pounds for a bottle of perfume.

בַּחֲנוּת הַנַּעֲלַיִם In the Shoe Shop

Miriam wants to buy a pair of black leather shoes. The saleslady shows her several pairs and Miriam chooses one that costs sixty pounds. Mrs. Tal says that they are too expensive. The saleslady gives them a discount and they buy the shoes.

Part three

בַּחֲנוּת הָרָהִיטִים In the Furniture Shop

Mr. and Mrs. Tal decide to buy new furniture. They enter a shop and tell the salesman what they want. He tells them that he takes orders also, but they say that they cannot decide at the moment.

Notes

Part one

1.	הַיּוֹם אָנוּ שׁוּב יוֹצְאוֹת לִקְנִיּוֹת	We're going shopping again today.
a.	אָנוּ	*we*, another form of אֲנַחְנוּ.
b.	שׁוּב	*again.* The word itself means *return*, i.e. *once more, again.*
c.	יוֹצְאוֹת לִקְנִיּוֹת	*going out shopping* (*going out for puchases*)
2.	בָּרְחוֹב אֲנַחְנוּ פּוֹגְשׁוֹת אֶת גְּבֶ׳ פּוֹגֶל	We meet Mrs. Fogel in the street.
	גְּבֶ׳	*Mrs., Miss.* גְּבֶ׳ is an abbreviation for גְּבֶרֶת. Note the sign (apostrophe) at the end of the word.
3.	הִיא כּוֹעֶסֶת מְאֹד	She is very angry.
4.	כָּל הַיּוֹם הִיא מִסְתּוֹבֶבֶת מֵחֲנוּת לַחֲנוּת	All day she wanders from store to store.
	הִיא מִסְתּוֹבֶבֶת	*she is walking around*
	מֵחֲנוּת לַחֲנוּת	*from one store to another*
5.	וְאֵינָהּ יְכוֹלָה לִמְצֹא שִׂמְלָה בִּשְׁבִילָהּ	And she is unable to find a dress for herself.
	אֵינָהּ יְכוֹלָה לִמְצֹא	*she is unable to find.* This is a useful pattern to learn.
6.	כֻּלָּנוּ הוֹלְכוֹת יַחַד לִקְנוֹת מְעִיל גֶּשֶׁם לִגְבֶרֶת פּוֹגֶל	All of us go together to find a raincoat for Mrs. Fogel.
a.	כֻּלָּנוּ	*all of us* from כֹּל *all*
b.	יַחַד	*together*, also בְּיַחַד
c.	מְעִיל גֶּשֶׁם	*raincoat*

7.	גְּבֶרֶת פּוֹגֶל קוֹנָה מְעִיל גֶּשֶׁם מִתּוֹצֶרֶת הָאָרֶץ	Mrs. Fogel buys a raincoat made in Israel.
	מִתּוֹצֶרֶת הָאָרֶץ	*made in Israel* (*from the product of the land*)
8.	בַּחֲנוּת הַנַּעֲלַיִם יֵשׁ מְכִירָה כְּלָלִית	In the shoe shop there is a general sale.
9.	לְמַעְלָה מֵעֶשְׂרִים וַחֲמִשָּׁה אָחוּז הֲנָחָה עַל כָּל זוּג	There is over twenty-five per cent reduction on each pair.
a.	לְמַעְלָה מִ־	*above, over* לְמַעְלָה *up*
b.	הֲנָחָה	*discount, reduction*
10.	מִרְיָם מְבַקֶּשֶׁת זוּג נַעֲלֵי עוֹר בְּצֶבַע שָׁחוֹר	Miriam is looking for a pair of black leather shoes.
a.	מְבַקֶּשֶׁת	*requests, seeks.* The word בְּבַקָּשָׁה *please* is of the same root.
b.	נַעֲלֵי עוֹר	*shoes of leather*
11.	מְחִיר הַזּוּג אַחֲרֵי הַהֲנָחָה עֲדַיִן גָּבֹהַּ	The price of the pair after the reduction is still high.
	עֲדַיִן גָּבֹהַּ	*still high*
12.	אֲנִי מַצְלִיחָה לְהוֹרִיד עוֹד שָׁלֹשׁ לִירוֹת	I managed to have the price reduced another three pounds. (I manage to lower the price three pounds more.)
a.	אֲנִי מַצְלִיחָה	*I succeed, I can manage*
b.	לְהוֹרִיד	*to bring down* יָרַד *go down*
13.	לְעַצְמִי כָּרָגִיל לֹא קָנִיתִי שִׂמְלָה	As usual, I didn't buy a dress for myself.

a. לְעַצְמִי — *for myself* —לְ *for* is joined to עַצְמִי *myself*.

b. כָּרָגִיל — *As usual,* —כְּ means *like* or *as* רָגִיל *usual*.

c. קָנִיתִי — *I bought*. This verb comes from קָנָה *buy*.

Part two

14. הַאִם אֲנִי יְכוֹלָה לַעֲזוֹר לָכֶן? — Can I help you?

לַעֲזוֹר לָכֶן? — *to help you*. Note Hebrew —לְ עָזַר for *help*.

15. כֵּן, אֲנִי רוֹצָה שְׂפָתוֹן — Yes, I want a lipstick.

שְׂפָתוֹן — *lipstick*. Note שָׂפָה *lip*.

16. לֹא, אֲנִי מַעֲדִיפָה כָּתֹם אוֹ וָרֹד — No, I prefer an orange or pink colour.

a. אֲנִי מַעֲדִיפָה — *I prefer* (*f.*) אֲנִי מַעֲדִיף (*m.*)

b. כָּתֹם אוֹ וָרֹד — *orange or pink*. Here are some of the main colours:

לָבָן	*white*	אָדֹם	*red*
שָׁחוֹר	*black*	צָהֹב	*yellow*
כָּחֹל	*blue*	חוּם	*brown*
יָרֹק	*green*	אָפֹר	*grey*

17. הַצֶּבַע הַוָּרֹד מוֹדֶרְנִי מְאֹד הַשָּׁנָה — The pink colour is very popular this year.

a. מוֹדֶרְנִי — *modern, popular*

b. הַשָּׁנָה — *this year* (*the year*). Similarly הַיּוֹם *today* הָעֶרֶב *this evening* הַשָּׁבוּעַ *this week* הַחֹדֶשׁ *this month*.

18. לֹא, זֶה קְצָת יוֹתֵר מִדַּי בָּהִיר. — No, it's a little too bright.

a. קְצָת — *a little, slightly*

b. יוֹתֵר מִדַּי בָּהִיר — *too bright*. Note the difference:

בָּהִיר — *bright* (colour)
יוֹתֵר בָּהִיר — *brighter*
יוֹתֵר מִדַּי בָּהִיר — *too bright* (*more than enough bright*)

19. אֵיזֶה צֶבַע אַתְּ רוֹצָה? — What colour do you want?

20. אֲנִי רוֹצָה צֶבַע וָרֹד כֵּהֶה — I want a dark pink colour.

וָרֹד כֵּהֶה — *dark pink*

21. וְכַמָּה עוֹלִים בַּקְבּוּקֵי הַבֹּשֶׂם הָאֵלֶּה? — And how much do those bottles of perfume cost?

בַּקְבּוּקֵי הַבֹּשֶׂם הָאֵלֶּה — *those bottles of perfume*

22. אֲנִי רוֹצָה זוּג נַעֲלֵי עוֹר — I want a pair of leather shoes.

23. אֵיזוֹ מִדָּה אַתְּ נוֹעֶלֶת? — What size do you take?

a. מִדָּה — *size, measure* (*n.*) מָדַד *measure* (*v.*) לִמְדֹּד *to measure*

b. אַתְּ נוֹעֶלֶת — *you wear* (*f.*), referring to shoes. Note that נוֹעֶלֶת is from נַעַל *shoe*.

24. אֲנִי נוֹעֶלֶת מִסְפָּר שְׁלֹשִׁים וְאַרְבַּע — I take size 34.

מִסְפָּר שְׁלֹשִׁים וְאַרְבַּע — *number* 34. Israel uses European size numbers for shoes.

25. בְּסֵדֶר, הִנֵּה כַּמָּה דֻּגְמָאוֹת — Very well, here are a few styles.

דֻּגְמָאוֹת — *style, model*. It is a Greek loan word.

26. אֲנִי רוֹצָה נַעַל עִם עָקֵב גָּבֹהַּ יוֹתֵר — I want a shoe with a higher heel.

עָקֵב גָּבֹהַּ יוֹתֵר — *higher heel*

27. הִנֵּה זוּג נַעֲלַיִם עִם עָקֵב גָּבֹהַּ וְעוֹר רַךְ וְחָלָק — Here is a pair of high heeled shoes with smooth, soft leather.

28. הֵן נוֹחוֹת לִי מְאֹד. כַּמָּה הֵן עוֹלוֹת? — They're very comfortable. How much are they?

a. הֵן נוֹחוֹת לִי — *They are comfortable for me.*

b. כַּמָּה הֵן עוֹלוֹת — *How much do they cost?* Remember, shoes are feminine.

29. שִׁשִּׁים לִירוֹת זֶה יָקָר מִדַּי. תַּעֲשִׂי לָנוּ הֲנָחָה — Sixty is too expensive, give us a discount.

יָקָר מִדַּי — *too expensive*. You can also say יָקָר יוֹתֵר מִדַּי See note 18 above.

30. בִּשְׁבִילְכֶן חֲמִשִּׁים וְשֶׁבַע לִירוֹת, אַף פְּרוּטָה פָּחוֹת — For you, fifty seven pounds and not a penny less.

a. בִּשְׁבִילְכֶם — *for you* (*m. p.*). See Grammar Appendix, Notes 80–90

b. פְּרוּטָה — *pruta*, or one hundredth of a *lira* (pound).

Part three

31. הָרָהִיטִים שֶׁלָּנוּ יְשָׁנִים, צָרִיךְ לִקְנוֹת חֲדָשִׁים — Our furniture is old, we have to buy new furniture.

a. הָרָהִיטִים שֶׁלָּנוּ יְשָׁנִים — *our furniture is old*
The word רָהִיטִים can also be vocalised: רְהִיטִים
יָשָׁן *old*, for objects and things
זָקֵן *old*, for human beings, animals etc.

b. צָרִיךְ לִקְנוֹת — *It is necessary to buy*

32. בְּסֵדֶר גָּמוּר, הִנֵּה חֲנוּת רָהִיטִים, בּוֹאִי נִכָּנֵס — Fine, here is the furniture shop, let's go in.

בּוֹאִי נִכָּנֵס — *let's go inside, let's enter* בּוֹאִי *come* (*f. imp.*)

33. בַּמֶּה אַתֶּם רוֹצִים לְרַהֵט אֶת חֲדַר הַשֵּׁנָה? — How do you want to furnish the bedroom?

a. בַּמֶּה — *with what?* It is composed of בְּ־מָה.

b. חֲדַר הַשֵּׁנָה — *the bedroom* (*the room for sleeping*)

34. אֲנִי רוֹצָה לְהַזְמִין אֲרוֹן קִיר לַחֲדַר הַשֵּׁנָה וְשֻׁלְחַן כְּתִיבָה לַחֲדַר הַיְלָדִים. הַאִם אַתֶּם מְקַבְּלִים הַזְמָנוֹת? — I want to order a wardrobe for the bedroom and a writing desk for the children's room. Do you take orders?

a. לְהַזְמִין אֲרוֹן קִיר — *to order a wardrobe*

b. שֻׁלְחַן כְּתִיבָה — *writing desk*

c. הַאִם אַתֶּם מְקַבְּלִים הַזְמָנוֹת? — *do you accept orders?*

35. סְלִיחָה, קָשֶׁה לָנוּ לְהַחְלִיט כָּרֶגַע — I'm sorry, but it's difficult for us to decide at the moment.

a. קָשֶׁה לָנוּ לְהַחְלִיט — *it is difficult for us to decide*
Similarly קָשֶׁה לוֹ לִכְתֹּב *it is difficult for him to write*, etc.

b. כָּרֶגַע — *at the moment, now, right now*

Lesson twelve **A visit to the Kibbutz**

What happens

Part one

Miriam tells about a school trip to a kibbutz. Upon arrival they do not meet many of the kibbutz members,since they are at work in the orange groves and in the fields. One of the kibbutz members tells about their way of life and outlines the principles of kibbutz life. He then leads them on a tour of the settlement.

Part two

בַּלּוּל In the Hen House
Miriam and Daliah visit the hen house and talk with the man who works there.

בַּשָּׂדֶה In the Field
Miriam and Daliah see mushrooms in the field and decide to pick some. Daliah tells Miriam how to distinguish between edible and poisonous mushrooms. Miriam finds that it is hard to tell the difference between them and Daliah tells her that she shouldn't pick any if she is not sure about them.

Part three

טִיּוּל בְּאוֹפַנַּיִם A Bicycle Trip
Mike and Susan are on a bicycle trip from Natanya to Hertzlia. They discover that they have lost their way. They ask directions from a man working in a field. He directs them to the road to Hertzlia.

Notes

Part one

1. הַיּוֹם הַכִּתָּה שֶׁלָּנוּ נוֹסַעַת לְטִיּוּל לְבַקֵּר בְּקִבּוּץ — Today our class is making an excursion to visit the kibbutz.

a. הַכִּתָּה שֶׁלָּנוּ — *our class.*

b. לְבַקֵּר בְּקִבּוּץ — *to visit the kibbutz*

A Note on the Kibbutz: The term *Kibbutz* derives from a Hebrew word meaning *group*. The kibbutz is a communal or collective settlement governed by the general assembly of its members. All property is collectively owned and work is organized on a collective basis. Members receive no salary, but in return for their work get housing, clothing, food, medical services, education for their children and other social amenities. Kibbutzim are predominantly agricultural, but some have added sizeable industrial or ancillary enterprises—canning, motorcycle assembly, fish-breeding, deep-sea fishing, plywood manufacture. The number of members ranges from 90 to 2,000. There are at present some 225 kibbutzim in all parts of the country.

2. אֲנַחְנוּ גָּרִים בָּעִיר — We live in the city.

3. לְחֵלֶק מֵהַתַּלְמִידִים זֶה הַבִּקּוּר הָרִאשׁוֹן בַּקִּבּוּץ — For some of the pupils, this is the first visit to the kibbutz.

a. לְחֵלֶק — *to a portion, to some, for some*

b. זֶה הַבִּקּוּר הָרִאשׁוֹן — *this is the first visit*

4.	אֲנַחְנוּ מַגִּיעִים לַקִּבּוּץ נִכְנָסִים לַחֲדַר הָאֹכֶל הַגָּדוֹל	We arrive at the kibbutz (and) enter the large dining room.
5.	חֲדַר הָאֹכֶל רֵיק כִּי כָּל הַחֲבֵרִים עוֹבְדִים	The dining room is empty because all of the members are working.
	כָּל הַחֲבֵרִים	*all the members* חָבֵר *friend, member*
6.	חֵלֶק עוֹבְדִים בַּפַּרְדֵּס וְחֵלֶק בַּשָּׂדֶה	Some work in the citrus grove and some in the field.
	פַּרְדֵּס	*citrus grove, orchard*
7.	הַחֲבֵרוֹת עֲסוּקוֹת בְּבָתֵּי הַיְלָדִים, בַּמִּכְבָּסָה אוֹ בְּמִטְבַּח הַקִּבּוּץ	The women are busy in the children's home, in the laundry, or in the kitchen of the kibbutz.
a.	עֲסוּקוֹת	*busy (f.p.)*
b.	בְּבָתֵּי הַיְלָדִים	*in the children's houses.* Note: בַּיִת *house* בָּתִּים *houses*
8.	אֶחָד הַחֲבֵרִים מְסַפֵּר לָנוּ קְצָת עַל הַקִּבּוּץ	One of the members tells us a little about the kibbutz.
a.	אֶחָד הַחֲבֵרִים	*one of the members*
b.	מְסַפֵּר לָנוּ קְצָת	*tells us a little*, i.e. *tells us something*
9.	הוּא מְסַפֵּר שֶׁבַּקִּבּוּץ כָּל הַחֲבֵרִים וְהַחֲבֵרוֹת שָׁוִים	He says that in the kibbutz all the men and women members are equal.
	שָׁוִים	*equal (m.p.)*
10.	הֵם לֹא מְקַבְּלִים כֶּסֶף בְּעַד הָעֲבוֹדָה שֶׁלָּהֶם	They don't receive money for their work.
	בְּעַד הָעֲבוֹדָה שֶׁלָּהֶם	*for their work* בְּעַד *for, in exchange for*

11.	אֲבָל הֵם מְקַבְּלִים כָּל מַה שֶּׁהֵם צְרִיכִים	But, they receive everything they need.
	כָּל מַה שֶּׁהֵם צְרִיכִים	*all that they need (all what that they need)*
12.	הַקִּבּוּץ בָּנוּי עַל יְסוֹדוֹת שֶׁל שִׁוְיוֹן, שִׁתּוּף וְאַחֲרָיוּת הֲדָדִית	The kibbutz is built on foundations of equality, cooperation and mutual responsibility.
a.	בָּנוּי	*is built (part.), is based* from בָּנָה *build*
b.	עַל יְסוֹדוֹת	*on foundations*
c.	שִׁוְיוֹן	*equality*
d.	אַחֲרָיוּת הֲדָדִית	*mutual responsibility*
13.	אֲנַחְנוּ מְבַקְּרִים בְּבֵית הַתִּינוֹקוֹת, גַּן הַיְלָדִים וּבֵית הַסֵּפֶר	We are visiting the babies' home, the kindergarten and the school.
a.	בֵּית הַתִּינוֹקוֹת	*the babies' home.* In the kibbutz, the children from infancy live, eat and sleep with their own age groups in the babies' home and the children's home; they are in the care of trained nurses and teachers and the parents spend time with them every day after work and on the Sabbath.
b.	גַּן הַיְלָדִים	*the kindergarten*
14.	כֻּלָּנוּ נֶהֱנִים מְאֹד מֵהַבִּקּוּר בַּקִּבּוּץ	We all enjoy the visit to the kibbutz very much.
	כֻּלָּנוּ נֶהֱנִים מְאֹד	*we all enjoy very much*

Part two

15.	דָּלְיָה, לְאָן אַתְּ רָצָה?	Daliah, where are you running to?
	לְאָן	*where to?* but אֵיפֹה *where?*

16.	אֲנִי הוֹלֶכֶת לְבַקֵּר בַּלּוּל	I'm going to visit the hen house.
	לְבַקֵּר בַּלּוּל	*to visit the hen house.* In Hebrew we say *to visit in.*
17.	מָה אַתְּ אוֹהֶבֶת שָׁם כָּל כָּךְ?	What do you like there so much?
	כָּל כָּךְ	*so much*
18.	אֲנִי אוֹהֶבֶת לֶאֱסֹף אֶת הַבֵּיצִים הַטְּרִיּוֹת	I like to collect the fresh eggs.
	לֶאֱסֹף	*to collect*
	הַבֵּיצִים הַטְּרִיּוֹת	*the fresh eggs.* Note that בֵּיצָה *an egg* is feminine. The plural, however, has a masculine ending טָרִי *fresh* לֶחֶם טָרִי *fresh bread*
19.	כֵּן, אֶפְשָׁר לְהַרְגִּישׁ זֹאת עַל־פִּי הָרֵיחַ	Yes, you can tell by the smell.
a.	לְהַרְגִּישׁ	*to feel, to sense.* We have already met this word before. אֵיךְ אַתָּה מַרְגִּישׁ? *How do you feel?* i.e. *How are you?* Lesson 4, note 8.
b.	עַל פִּי־הָרֵיחַ	*by the smell* עַל־פִּי *according to*
20.	אֲנִי רוֹאָה שֶׁיֵּשׁ לָכֶם הַרְבֵּה עוֹפוֹת	I can see that you have many chickens.
a.	שֶׁיֵּשׁ לָכֶם	*that you have*
b.	עוֹפוֹת	*chickens*
21.	יֵשׁ לָנוּ כְּאֶלֶף תַּרְנְגוֹלוֹת	We have about a thousand hens.
	כְּאֶלֶף תַּרְנְגוֹלוֹת	*about a thousand hens.* Note —כְּ *like, about*
22.	אֲנִי רוֹאָה מִסְפַּר פִּטְרִיּוֹת בַּשָּׂדֶה	I see a number of mushrooms in the field.
	מִסְפַּר פִּטְרִיּוֹת	*a number of mushrooms*

23.	אוּלַי נִקַּח כַּמָּה מֵהֶן הַבַּיְתָה?	Shall we take some of them home?
	כַּמָּה מֵהֶם	*several of them* (*how many of them*)
24.	הַאִם אַתְּ יוֹדַעַת לְזַהוֹת פִּטְרִיּוֹת טוֹבוֹת לְמַאֲכָל?	Do you know how to identify edible mushrooms?
	לְזַהוֹת	*to identify.* Note זֶה *this*, thus לְזַהוֹת *to say this is it* i.e. *identify*
25.	קַל מְאֹד לְזַהוֹת אוֹתָן, הַחֵלֶק הָעֶלְיוֹן הוּא חוּם וְהַחֵלֶק הַתַּחְתּוֹן הוּא צָהֹב	It's very easy to identify them. The upper part is brown, and the bottom part is yellow.
a.	הַחֵלֶק הָעֶלְיוֹן	*the upper part.* עֶלְיוֹן is from עַל *on* and עָלָה *go up*
b.	הַחֵלֶק הַתַּחְתּוֹן	*the bottom part* תַּחְתּוֹן *lower, bottom* from תַּחַת *under*
26.	בְּסֵדֶר, אֲבָל אֵינִי יוֹדַעַת הֵיכָן לָשִׂים אוֹתָן	Fine, but I don't know where to put them.
a.	אֵינִי יוֹדַעַת	*I (f.) don't know*
b.	לָשִׂים אוֹתָן	*to put them (f.), the mushrooms* פִּטְרִיּוֹת *(f.)* See Grammar Appendix, Note 80.
27.	שִׂימִי אוֹתָן בַּסַּל	Put them in the basket.
28.	מְצֻיֶּנֶת. בְּדֶרֶךְ כְּלָל, אִם יֵשׁ לָךְ סָפֵק, לֹא כְּדַאי לָךְ לָקַחַת אֶת הַפִּטְרִיּוֹת	Excellent. Generally, if you have any doubt, it's not worthwhile your picking the mushrooms. (It's not worth it for you to pick the mushrooms.)
a.	מְצֻיֶּנֶת	*excellent (f.)*
b.	בְּדֶרֶךְ כְּלָל	*generally*
c.	אִם יֵשׁ לָךְ סָפֵק	*if you have (any) doubt*
d.	לֹא כְּדַאי	*it is not worth it*

29. טִיּוּל בְּאוֹפַנַּיִם — An excursion by bicycle

30. עָזַבְנוּ אֶת נְתַנְיָה לִפְנֵי שְׁעָתַיִם כִּמְעַט — We left Natanya almost two hours ago.

a. נְתַנְיָה — *Natanya.* A seaside resort between Tel-Aviv and Haifa. It is well known for its diamond polishing factories and other industries.

b. לִפְנֵי שְׁעָתַיִם כִּמְעַט — *almost two hours ago.* Hebrew לִפְנֵי *before, in front of, ago* לִפְנֵי הַבַּיִת *in front of the house* לִפְנֵי שָׁנָה *a year ago.* In Hebrew you may use כִּמְעַט *almost* at the end of the sentence.

31. רַגְלַי מַתְחִילוֹת לִכְאֹב — My legs are beginning to hurt.

רַגְלַי מַתְחִילוֹת — *my legs are beginning (f.).* Note that רֶגֶל *foot or leg* is feminine. See L. 8, note 38a.

32. אֲנִי חוֹשֵׁב שֶׁתָּעִינוּ בַּדֶּרֶךְ — I think that we went the wrong way.

שֶׁתָּעִינוּ בַּדֶּרֶךְ — *that we got lost, that we went the wrong way, that we had made an error in the road*

33. כֵּן, גַּם אֲנִי חוֹשֶׁבֶת שֶׁתָּעִינוּ — Yes, I too am afraid we are lost.

אֲנִי חוֹשֶׁשֶׁת — *I fear, I am afraid*

34. הִנֵּה אָדָם עוֹבֵד בַּשָּׂדֶה — Here is a man working in the field.

35. סְלִיחָה אֲדוֹנִי, הַאִם אֲנַחְנוּ רְחוֹקִים מֵהֶרְצְלִיָּה? — Excuse me, sir, are we far from Hertzlia?

מֵהֶרְצְלִיָּה — *from Hertzlia.* A seaside holiday resort north of Tel-Aviv, known for its excellent beaches and hotels.

36. אַתֶּם רוֹאִים אֶת הַקִּבּוּץ? כַּאֲשֶׁר תַּעַבְרוּ אֶת הַקִּבּוּץ, פְּנוּ אֶל הַכְּבִישׁ הָרָאשִׁי מִצַּד שְׂמֹאל — Do you see that kibbutz? When you pass the kibbutz, turn left onto the main road.

a. פְּנוּ — *turn (imp.)*

b. הַכְּבִישׁ הָרָאשִׁי — *the main road*

37. מָה הַמֶּרְחָק לְהֶרְצְלִיָּה מִפֹּה? — What's the distance to Hertzlia from here?

מֶרְחָק — *distance* רָחוֹק *far*

38. שִׁבְעָה עַד שְׁמוֹנָה קִילוֹמֶטְרִים — Seven to eight kilometres.

39. לַעֲזָאזֵל. בַּפַּעַם הַבָּאָה נִסַּע בִּמְכוֹנִית — Damn it. Next time we'll go by car.

a. לַעֲזָאזֵל — *Damn it! Hell!*

b. נִסַּע — *we shall travel, we shall make the trip*

שִׁעוּר שְׁלוֹשָׁה־עָשָׂר שַׁבָּת בְּתֵל־אָבִיב

Lesson thirteen The Sabbath in Tel-Aviv.

What happens

Part one

Miriam describes how the family spends the Sabbath.
She talks about her mother's preparations and the change that comes over the city every Sabbath. Everything is quiet and the people stroll in the streets.
On Saturday night her parents go out but she must stay at home to look after Danny. Too bad.

Part two

אֲרוּחַת לֵיל שַׁבָּת The Sabbath Evening Meal
Ruth is serving the Sabbath dinner. She thanks Yaakov for the flowers he sent her and he compliments her on her cooking. Danny says that the Sabbath meals are the only meals he likes because they are so leisurely and because his mother bakes such good cakes.

מָה עוֹשִׂים בְּשַׁבָּת? What do you do on the Sabbath?
Miriam tells Susan that she likes to sleep late on the Sabbath. She suggests that this Sabbath they go to the beach. Susan agrees.

Part three

שִׂיחָה בֵּין שָׂרָה וְסוּזָן A Conversation Between Sarah and Susan
Sarah tells Susan that she usually spends the weekday evenings studying, but that last night was an exception — she went to a film with her boyfriend. Asked if she likes historical films Sarah answers that she does, that she likes history in general and that for her the most important historical date is the day she met her boyfriend, Ronnie.

Notes

Part one

1.	הַיּוֹם שַׁבָּת	Today is the Sabbath. A note on the Sabbath. The Sabbath day is Saturday, the seventh day of the week. The Sabbath commences at sunset on Friday, and ends with the appearance of the first stars at nightfall on Saturday. Government offices, public institutions, shops and public places of entertainment are closed on that day and most public transport ceases.
2.	הַשַּׁבָּת הִיא יוֹם שֶׁל מְנוּחָה וְעֹנֶג	The Sabbath is a day of rest and enjoyment.
	יוֹם מְנוּחָה וְעֹנֶג	*a day of rest and enjoyment*
3.	דָּנִי נוֹהֵג לוֹמַר שֶׁהוּא חַי מִשַּׁבָּת לְשַׁבָּת	Danny keeps saying that he lives from Sabbath to Sabbath.
a.	נוֹהֵג לוֹמַר	*keeps on saying, would say* (*is accustomed to say*)
b.	חַי	*lives* from חָיָה *live*. Have you heard לְחַיִּים *to life*? equivalent in English to *to your health*!
4.	בְּשַׁבָּת כָּל הַמִּשְׁפָּחָה מְבַלָּה יַחַד בַּבַּיִת	On the Sabbath, the entire family spends time together at home.
a.	כָּל הַמִּשְׁפָּחָה	*the entire family* but כָּל מִשְׁפָּחָה *every family*
b.	מְבַלָּה יַחַד	*spends time together*. The principal parts are מְבַלֶּה, מְבַלָּה, מְבַלִּים, מְבַלּוֹת

5. אֲנִי אוֹהֶבֶת מְאֹד אֶת לֵיל הַשַּׁבָּת — I like Friday evening very much.

לֵיל הַשַּׁבָּת — *the night of the Sabbath.* Since the Sabbath begins on Friday evening at dusk, *the night of the Sabbath* means *Friday evening.*
Saturday evening is called מוֹצָאֵי שַׁבָּת.

6. עַל הַשֻּׁלְחָן מַפָּה לְבָנָה, צִנְצֶנֶת פְּרָחִים נֵרוֹת שַׁבָּת וְחַלּוֹת — On the table are a white table cloth, a vase of flowers, Sabbath candles, and challas.

a. מַפָּה לְבָנָה — *white table cloth.* מַפָּה can also mean a *map.*

b. נֵרוֹת שַׁבָּת — *Sabbath candles.* Before the Sabbath commences, the traditional lighting of the candles takes place. This is one of several ceremonies honouring the Sabbath.

c. חַלּוֹת — *challas, Sabbath loaves,* specially baked braided bread for the Sabbath.

7. לִכְבוֹד שַׁבָּת אִמִּי מְבַשֶּׁלֶת דָּגִים טוֹבִים וְאוֹפָה עוּגָה טְעִימָה — In honour of the Sabbath my mother cooks good fish and bakes a tasty cake.

a. לִכְבוֹד שַׁבָּת — *in honour of the Sabbath.* The word לִכְבוֹד is often used to mean *for the sake of.* In writing an address we use לִכְבוֹד for *to* לִכְבוֹד מַר בֶּרְמַן *to Mr. Berman.* Here is an example of an address:

לִכְבוֹד מַר דָּוִד בֶּרְמַן
רְחוֹב בְּיַאלִיק 28
תֵּל־אָבִיב

Note that addresses, like most printing and writing in Israel, are written without vowels. The number of the building is written AFTER the name of the street.

b. מְבַשֶּׁלֶת — *cooks (f.).* This is the same pattern as מְדַבֵּר *speaks.* The principal parts are מְבַשֵּׁל, מְבַשֶּׁלֶת, מְבַשְּׁלִים, מְבַשְּׁלוֹת

c. וְאוֹפָה — *and she bakes*

8. בְּשַׁבָּת נָעִים בִּרְחוֹבוֹת הָעִיר — On the Sabbath, it's pleasant in the streets of the city.

בִּרְחוֹבוֹת הָעִיר — *in the streets of the city* רְחוֹב *street*

9. הָאוֹטוֹבּוּסִים אֵינָם נוֹסְעִים, הָאֲנָשִׁים הוֹלְכִים לְאַט — The buses don't run, and the people take their time.

a. אֵינָם נוֹסְעִים — *they do not run (travel)*

b. הוֹלְכִים לְאַט — *they take their time (they walk slowly)*

10. אֲנִי אוֹהֶבֶת אֶת הַשֶּׁקֶט בִּרְחוֹבוֹת תֵּל־אָבִיב — I like the quiet in the streets of Tel-Aviv.

הַשֶּׁקֶט — *the silence.* You will often hear !שֶׁקֶט בְּבַקָּשָׁה *Silence please!* or, שֶׁקֶט בְּבַקָּשָׁה, בֵּית חוֹלִים *Quiet, please. Hospital.*

11. בְּמוֹצָאֵי שַׁבָּת אֵינֶנִּי יְכוֹלָה לָצֵאת מֵהַבַּיִת — On Saturday evening, I can't go out of of the house.

a. בְּמוֹצָאֵי שַׁבָּת — *On Saturday evening (at the going out of the Sabbath).* Remember that the Sabbath begins at dusk on Friday evening.

b. אֵינֶנִּי יְכוֹלָה לָצֵאת — *I cannot go out.* For the different forms of אֵין see Grammar Appendix, Note 66b. לָצֵאת *to go out* from יָצָא *go out.* בְּמוֹצָאֵי *at the going out of* in note 11a above is also from יָצָא *go out.*

c. מהבית *from the house*

12. במוצאי שבת יוצאים הורי לבלות — On Saturday night my parents go out to have a good time.

a. הורי — *my parents*. The word for *parents* is הורים For the different forms of the plural noun see Grammar Appendix, Note 10.

b. לבלות — *to spend time, to have a good time*. See also note 4b above.

13. אני צריכה להשאר עם דני בבית. אין ברירה, חבל מאד — I must stay at home with Danny. There's no choice, what a pity!

אני צריכה להשאר — *I must remain, I must stay*

חבל מאד — *it is a great pity, what a shame!*

Part two

14. שבת שלום — A Sabbath of peace.
This is the traditional Sabbath greeting. Every day we greet each other with שלום *peace, hello* but on the Sabbath — שבת שלום.

15. שבת שלום ומבורך. השלחן ערוך יפה, יעקב? — Sabbath blessings and peace. Isn't the table nicely set, Yaakov?

a. השלחן ערוך יפה — *the table is nicely set*

b. יעקב — *Jacob*

16. יפה מאד. אני אוהב את השבת בבית. מפה לבנה, בקבוק יין אדם, נרות שבת וחלות — Very pretty. I like the Sabbath at home. A white table cloth, a bottle of red wine, Sabbath candles and challas.

בקבוק יין אדם — *a bottle of red wine*

17. הפרחים ששלחת לי גם הם יפים מאד. תודה לך, יעקב — The flowers you sent me are also very pretty. Thank you, Yaakov.

הפרחים ששלחת לי — *the flowers which you sent (to) me.*
For the use of ־ש before a noun or verb see Lesson 4, note 22. See also Grammar Appendix, Note 27.

18. הנה הדגים בצלחת, בבקשה לאכל, בתאבון! — Here's the fish (on the plate), please eat, enjoy your meal.

a. בצלחת — *on the plate*. It may be useful here to give other table items.

מזלג *fork*
כף *tablespoon*
כפית *teaspoon*
סכין *knife*
מפית *napkin, serviette*

b. בתיאבון — *enjoy your meal (with an appetite).*

19. תודה, הדגים טובים מאד — Thanks, the fish is very good.

20. נכון, הדגים באמת טובים — That's right, the fish is really good.

נכון — *that's right*, a very common expression in spoken Hebrew. Also נכון? *Is it not so?*

21. מדוע אתה אוהב כל כך את הארוחות בשבת? — Why do you enjoy Sabbath meals so much?

מדוע — *why?* Also למה *why?*

22. ראשית, בשבת אני אוכל לאט, יש לי זמן, אני חפשי — First of all, I eat slowly. I have time, I'm free.

אני חפשי — *I am free* חפש *vacation, freedom*

23.	וּמָה הַסִּבָּה הַשְּׁנִיָּה?	And what's the second reason?
24.	הָעוּגוֹת הַטּוֹבוֹת שֶׁאִמָּא אוֹפָה לִכְבוֹד שַׁבָּת	The good cakes that mother bakes in honour of the Sabbath.
	שֶׁאִמָּא אוֹפָה	*that mother bakes*
25.	אֵיךְ אַתְּ מְבַלָּה אֶת הַשַּׁבָּת מִרְיָם?	How do you spend your Sabbaths, Miriam?
26.	בְּשַׁבָּת אֲנִי נָחָה אֲנִי אוֹהֶבֶת לִישׁוֹן מְאֻחָר	On the Sabbath I take it easy, I like to sleep late.
a.	אֲנִי נָחָה	*I take it easy (I rest)*
b.	לִישׁוֹן מְאֻחָר	*to sleep late*
27.	עַד מָתַי אַתְּ יְשֵׁנָה בְּשַׁבָּת?	How late do you sleep on the Sabbath?
	עַד מָתַי	*until when? until what time?*
28.	בְּשַׁבָּת אֲנִי יְשֵׁנָה לְפָחוֹת עַד עֶשֶׂר	On the Sabbath I sleep at least until ten.
	לְפָחוֹת	*at least* לְכָל הַיּוֹתֵר *at most*
29.	מַה נַּעֲשֶׂה בְּשַׁבָּת זֹאת?	What are we going to do this Sabbath?
	זֹאת	*this (f.).* You can also say בְּשַׁבָּת זוֹ *on this Sabbath*
30.	נֵלֵךְ לְהִתְרַחֵץ בַּיָּם. אַתְּ יוֹדַעַת לִשְׂחוֹת?	Let's go swimming in the sea. Can you swim? (Do you know how to swim?)
a.	לְהִתְרַחֵץ	*to bathe, to wash oneself.* For this pattern, see Grammar Appendix, Note 36.
b.	אַתְּ יוֹדַעַת לִשְׂחוֹת?	*can you swim?*
31.	כֵּן, אֲנִי שַׂחְיָנִית טוֹבָה	Yes, I'm a good swimmer.
	שַׂחְיָן	*swimmer (m.),* שַׂחְיָנִית *swimmer (f.)*

32.	שִׂיחָה בֵּין שָׂרָה וְסוּזַן	A conversation between Sarah and Susan.
	בֵּין	*between, among* but בֵּן *son*
33.	כֵּיצַד אַתְּ מְבַלָּה בְּדֶרֶךְ כְּלָל אֶת הָעֲרָבִים?	How do you generally spend your evenings?
a.	בְּדֶרֶךְ כְּלָל	*generally*
b.	הָעֲרָבִים	*the evenings* from עֶרֶב *evening.* The same word could also mean *the Arabs* from עֲרָבִי *an Arab.*
34.	בְּמֶשֶׁךְ כָּל יְמֵי הַשָּׁבוּעַ אֲנִי נִשְׁאֶרֶת בַּבַּיִת וְלוֹמֶדֶת	Every day of the week I stay home and study.
a.	יְמֵי הַשָּׁבוּעַ	*the days of the week*
b.	אֲנִי נִשְׁאֶרֶת בַּבַּיִת	*I stay at home*
35.	בְּלֵיל שַׁבָּת וּמוֹצָאֵי שַׁבָּת אֲנִי יוֹצֵאת לְבַלּוֹת	Friday night and Saturday night I go out to have a good time.
36.	אֶתְמוֹל בָּעֶרֶב לָמַדְתְּ?	Did you study last night?
a.	אֶתְמוֹל בָּעֶרֶב	*yesterday evening, last night*
b.	לָמַדְתְּ	*you (f.) studied.* For the different forms of the past tense, see Grammar Appendix, Notes 28, 29, 31b, 36.
37.	לֹא, אֶתְמוֹל בָּעֶרֶב הָיָה מִקְרֶה יוֹצֵא מִן הַכְּלָל. הָלַכְתִּי לִרְאוֹת סֶרֶט	No, last night was an exceptional case. I went to see a film.
a.	מִקְרֶה	*case, happening*
b.	יוֹצֵא מִן הַכְּלָל	*exceptional (going out of the rule)*
c.	הָלַכְתִּי לִרְאוֹת	*I went to see* הָלַךְ *go, walk*

38.	מַה זֹּאת אוֹמֶרֶת עִם מִי? עִם הֶחָבֵר שֶׁלִּי	What do you mean, "with whom?" With my boyfriend.
a.	מַה זֹּאת אוֹמֶרֶת	*what do you mean?* (*what does this say?*)
b.	עִם מִי?	*with whom?*
39.	הַאִם אַתְּ אוֹהֶבֶת סְרָטִים הִסְטוֹרִיִּים?	Do you like historical films?
	סְרָטִים הִסְטוֹרִיִּים	*historical films*
40.	כֵּן, אֲנִי בִּכְלָל אוֹהֶבֶת לִלְמֹד הִסְטוֹרְיָה. אֲנִי יוֹדַעַת בְּעַל־פֶּה הַרְבֵּה תַּאֲרִיכִים הִסְטוֹרִיִּים חֲשׁוּבִים	Yes, in general I like learning history. I know many important historical dates by heart.
a.	בִּכְלָל	*generally, in general*
b.	בְּעַל־פֶּה	*by heart*. The Hebrew idiom is *by mouth*.
c.	תַּאֲרִיךְ	*date* (historical)
41.	הַתַּאֲרִיךְ הֶחָשׁוּב בְּיוֹתֵר הוּא הַיּוֹם שֶׁבּוֹ הִכַּרְתִּי אֶת רוֹנִי, הֶחָבֵר שֶׁלִּי	The most important date is the one on which I met Ronnie, my boyfriend.
a.	הַתַּאֲרִיךְ הֶחָשׁוּב בְּיוֹתֵר	*the most important date*. See Grammar Appendix Note 8b.
b.	בּוֹ הִכַּרְתִּי	*on which I met* (*in which I met*).

שִׁעוּר אַרְבָּעָה־עָשָׂר   בִּרְחוֹבוֹת תֵּל־אָבִיב

Lesson fourteen   In the Streets of Tel-Aviv

What happens

Part one

Gil talks about the day he and Sarah spent in the streets of Tel-Aviv. They got up in the morning and from the balcony watched the people in the street. Later they went for a walk and witnessed an accident.

Part two

מְחַפְּשִׂים כְּתֹבֶת Looking for an Address

Reuven and Moshe are old friends who accidentally meet each other in the street in Tel-Aviv. Reuven is from Jerusalem and is looking for an address.

בְּתַחֲנַת הַמִּשְׁטָרָה At the Police Station

A policeman questions Mr. Berman who has witnessed an accident. Mr. Berman describes the accident and says it occurred because the road was slippery due to rain.

Part three

תְּאוּנָה An Accident

Susan, Gil and Sarah hear a crash and think it is an accident. Sarah criticizes the drivers but Gil says that pedestrians are responsible for most accidents.

Notes

Part one

1.	בַּבֹּקֶר קַמְנוּ מֻקְדָּם	We got up early in the morning. קַמְנוּ *we got up.* In this lesson you will be introduced to actions done or completed in the past,

such as *I ate, he came* etc. In this sentence, you have קַמְנוּ *we got up*. You may also say אֲנַחְנוּ קַמְנוּ *we got up*. Verbs in the past tense have special endings, known as suffixes. These are attached to ALL Hebrew verbs in the past without exception. Once you become familiar with these endings you will have no difficulties in understanding the different forms of the verbs. Here is the past tense of this verb קוּם *get up*

אֲנִי קַמְתִּי	*I (m. f.) got up*
אַתָּה קַמְתָּ	*you (m.) got up*
אַתְּ קַמְתְּ	*you (f.) got up*
הוּא קָם	*he got up*
הִיא קָמָה	*she got up*
אֲנַחְנוּ קַמְנוּ	*we (m. f.) got up*
אַתֶּם קַמְתֶּם	*you (m.) got up*
אַתֶּן קַמְתֶּן	*you (f.) got up*
הֵם קָמוּ	*they (m. f.) got up*

Remember you may or may not use the pronouns *I, you etc.* with the past tense. See Grammar Appendix, Note 28.

2. עָמַדְנוּ עַל הַמִּרְפֶּסֶת וְהִסְתַּכַּלְנוּ בָּרְחוֹב — We stood on the balcony and looked at the street.

a. עָמַדְנוּ — *we stood*. Compare קַמְנוּ *we got up* in note 1 above. Other examples in the past tense of עָמַד *stand* will be עָמַדְתִּי *I stood* עָמְדָה *she stood* עָמְדוּ *they stood etc.*

b. מִרְפֶּסֶת — *balcony, porch*. In Israel, as in many Mediterranean countries, most homes have balconies overlooking the street, the porch etc.

c. הִסְתַּכַּלְנוּ בְּ־ — *we watched, we looked at*. In Hebrew, you must use —בְּ for *watch* and עַל for *look at*.

d. רְחוֹב — *street*, רְחוֹבוֹת *streets*

3. רָאִינוּ פּוֹעֲלִים יוֹצְאִים לָעֲבוֹדָה — We saw workers going out to work.

a. רָאִינוּ — *we saw*. In Hebrew there is only one past tense. Thus רָאִינוּ could mean in English *we saw, we had seen, we have seen, we have been seeing.*

b. עֲבוֹדָה — *work (n.)* from עָבַד *work (v.)*

4. עֲגָלָה מְלֵאָה יְרָקוֹת עוֹמֶדֶת לְיַד חֲנוּת הַיְּרָקוֹת — A cart full of vegetables is standing near the greengrocer.
In Israel, there are still some fruit and vegetable vendors who sell their produce from carts and stalls.

a. יְרָקוֹת — *vegetables*, a word used for all kinds of greens and vegetables. You will remember יָרֹק *green*.

b. לְיַד — *near, by*

c. חֲנוּת הַיְּרָקוֹת — *the greengrocer*

5. אָכַלְנוּ מַהֵר וְיָצָאנוּ לְטַיֵּל בָּרְחוֹב — We ate quickly and went out for a walk in the street.

6. לְיַד תַּחֲנַת הָאוֹטוֹבּוּסִים חִכּוּ אֲנָשִׁים בַּתּוֹר — People were waiting in a queue near the bus stop.

a. תַּחֲנַת הָאוֹטוֹבּוּסִים — *the bus stop* תַּחֲנָה *stop, station* תַּחֲנַת *the station of*. See Grammar Appendix, Note 19.

b. חִכּוּ — *they waited, they were waiting*. See notes 1 and 3a above.

7. לאט לאט הלך וגדל הרעש ברחוב וגם התנועה הלכה וגדלה — Very slowly the noise in the street kept on growing, and the traffic as well (kept increasing).

a. לאט לאט — *very slowly* לאט *slowly*

b. הלך וגדל — *it kept on growing, it went on growing.* This is a useful expression with הלך *go.* Other examples:
הלך וקרא *he went on reading* but it could also mean *he went and read* (i.e. two separate actions).

c. תנועה — *traffic*, also *movement*

8. סוזן קראה את שלטי החנויות — Susan read the signs of the shops.

שלטי החנויות — *the signs of the shops* שלט *sign, poster*

9. ואמרה: פה כתוב באותיות גדולות "קולנוע" — And she said, Here cinema is written in big letters.

a. באותיות גדולות — *in big letters.* It can also mean *in capital letters.* When you fill in a form you may be asked כתב באותיות גדולות *write in big letters* meaning *write clearly* or *use capital letters,* or *print.*

b. קולנוע — *cinema* קולנוע is composed of two words קול *sound, voice* and נוע *moving.*

10. פה כתוב "אטליז" ושם כתוב "מספרה" — Here butcher's is written and there barber's.

a. אטליז — *butcher's*

b. מספרה — *hairdresser's, barber's*

11. פתאם נשמע רעש, כנראה היתה תאונה — Suddenly a noise was heard; it seems there was an accident.

היתה תאונה — *There was an accident.* You can also say קרתה תאונה *an accident occurred.*

12. אין רגע בלי פגע — There is not a moment without an accident.

13. הנהגים האלה! כל אחד חושב שהכביש שלו — These drivers! Everyone thinks that the road is his.

14. אך גם הולכי הרגל אשמים — But the pedestrians are also guilty.

a. הולכי רגל — *pedestrians* (*the walkers by foot*)

b. אשמים — *guilty* (*m. p.*)

15. הם לפעמים ממהרים מאד — They are sometimes in a great hurry.

16. מוטב לאחר לבוא בעולם הזה מאשר להקדים לבוא לעולם הבא — It is better to come late in this world than to come early to the next.

This is perhaps equivalent to *better late than never.*
There are several such slogans on posters and buses in Israel warning the public against fast driving and traffic violators.

a. לאחר לבוא — Note the two useful expressions in this sentence. לאחר לבוא *to come late* (*to be late to come*) and להקדים לבוא *to come early* (*to be early to come*).

b. מוטב — *it is better, rather*

c. העולם הזה — *this world,* in contrast with העולם הבא *the world to come* (*in heaven!*)

17. מְחַפְּשִׂים כְּתֹבֶת — Looking for an address.

כְּתֹבֶת — *address* from כָּתַב *write*

18. בְּחַיַּי, זֶה רְאוּבֵן, שָׁלוֹם בֶּאֱמֶת הַפְתָּעָה נְעִימָה, מַה שְּׁלוֹמְךָ? — Well, well, it's Reuven — Hello. Really it's a nice surprise. How are you?

בְּחַיַּי — *by my life*, it could mean *well! well!* It is from חַיִּים *life*.

19. בָּרוּךְ הַשֵּׁם! יֵשׁ לִי עֲבוֹדָה מֵעַל הָרֹאשׁ — Thank God. I have too much work.

עֲבוֹדָה מֵעַל הָרֹאשׁ — *work above the head* i.e. *too much work*

20. אָסוּר לְהִתְאוֹנֵן, הָעִקָּר הַבְּרִיאוּת — One should not complain; the main thing is health.

a. This sentence contains two important sentences: אָסוּר לְהִתְאוֹנֵן *one should not complain* (*it is forbidden to complain*) and הָעִקָּר הַבְּרִיאוּת *the main thing is health.*

b. The word עִקָּר means *principle, basis.* This sentence is often used to mean: *There is nothing better or more important in life than health.*

21. אִם כָּךְ מָה אַתָּה עוֹשֶׂה פֹּה? — If so, what are you doing here?

אִם כָּךְ — *if so*

22. אֲנִי מְחַפֵּשׂ אֶת הַכְּתֹבֶת הַזֹּאת. אוּלַי אַתָּה יוֹדֵעַ אֵיפֹה רְחוֹב "הַגְּדוּד הָעִבְרִי"? — I'm looking for this address. Perhaps you know where Hagedud Ha-Ivri Street is?

23. תּוֹדָה, בַּהִזְדַּמְּנוּת הָרִאשׁוֹנָה — Thanks, at the first opportunity.

הִזְדַּמְּנוּת — *opportunity, occasion.*

24. אֶתְמוֹל אַחַר הַצָּהֳרַיִם הָיִיתָ עֵד רְאִיָּה לַתְּאוּנָה שֶׁבָּהּ נִפְגַּע ד"ר לַמְבֶּרְט? — Yesterday afternoon were you an eyewitness to the accident in which Dr. Lambert was hurt?

a. עֵד רְאִיָּה — *an eyewitness* רְאִיָּה *seeing* from רָאָה *see*

b. שֶׁבָּהּ — *in which* בָּהּ *in her* (*f.*) referring to תְּאוּנָה *accident* which is feminine.

c. נִפְגַּע — *he was stricken.* This is related to the word פֶּגַע *accident* in note 12 above.

25. אֵיפֹה הָיִיתָ בִּזְמַן הַתְּאוּנָה? — Where were you at the time of the accident?

26. הָיִיתִי לְיַד הַתֵּיאַטְרוֹן "הַקָּאמֶרִי" — I was near the Chamber Theatre.

a. הָיִיתִי — *I was.* Other forms of this verb are הָיָה *he was* הָיְתָה *she was* הָיִינוּ *we were*

b. הַתֵּיאַטְרוֹן הַקָּאמֶרִי — *The Chamber Theatre* The Cameri (Chamber) Theatre was founded in 1944 and has its headquarters in Tel-Aviv. This theatre has a flair for plays in the lighter vein and has in the past produced in Hebrew such plays as "Pygmalion" and "Born Yesterday".

27. אֵיךְ קָרְתָה הַתְּאוּנָה? — How did the accident happen?

אֵיךְ — *how?* Another word is כֵּיצַד *how?*

28. הָרְחוֹב הָיָה חָלָק מְאֹד מִכֵּיוָן שֶׁיָּרַד גֶּשֶׁם. ד"ר לַמְבֶּרְט שֶׁמְּכוֹנִיתוֹ נָסְעָה מַהֵר מְאֹד לֹא יָכֹל לַעֲצֹר אוֹתָהּ בִּזְמַן — The road was very slippery, since it had been raining. Dr. Lambert, whose car was going very fast, was not able to stop in time.

a. מִכֵּיוָן שֶׁיָּרַד גֶּשֶׁם — *since it had rained* or *since it had been raining*. Remember there is only one past tense in Hebrew and you should use the most appropriate English rendering.

b. שֶׁמְּכוֹנִיתוֹ — *whose car* (*that his car*)

c. לֹא יָכֹל לַעֲצֹר אוֹתָהּ — *he could not stop it*. אוֹתָהּ *it* (*f.*) referring to *the car* מְכוֹנִית (f.)

29. מָה הָיְתָה הַמְּהִירוּת שֶׁל הַמַּשָּׂאִית בִּזְמַן שֶׁקָּרְתָה הַתְּאוּנָה? — How fast was the lorry going when the accident happened?

a. מְהִירוּת — *speed*. Remember מְמַהֵר *is hurrying* (*m.*) and מַהֵר *quickly*.

b. מַשָּׂאִית — *lorry, truck*

30. בְּעֵרֶךְ 30 קִילוֹמֶטֶר לְשָׁעָה — About thirty kilometres per hour.

30 קִילוֹמֶטֶר לְשָׁעָה — *thirty kilometres per hour*. Eight kilometres are equivalent to five miles. קִילוֹמֶטֶר is often abbreviated ק״מ

31. אֲנִי מוֹדֶה לְךָ, אֲדוֹנִי — Thank you, sir.

מוֹדֶה — *thank* (*m.*) The four principal parts are מוֹדֶה, מוֹדָה, מוֹדִים, מוֹדוֹת

Part three

32. מָה הָרַעַשׁ שָׁם בָּרְחוֹב? — What's the noise there, in the street?

33. כַּנִּרְאֶה קָרְתָה תְּאוּנָה — It seems that there has been an accident. (It seems that an accident has occurred).

קָרְתָה — *it* (*f.*) *occurred, it happened*.

קָרָה — *it* (*m.*) *occurred*

קָרְתָה — *it* (*f.*) *occurred*. Similarly

הָיָה *he was* — הָיְתָה *she was*

רָאָה *he saw* — רָאֲתָה *she saw*

34. אָמְנָם הַנֶּהָגִים אֵינָם צַדִּיקִים, אֲבָל בְּעִקָּר אֲשֵׁמִים הוֹלְכֵי הָרֶגֶל — Indeed the drivers aren't right, but mainly it is the pedestrians who are guilty.

a. אָמְנָם — *it is true*

b. בְּעִקָּר — *especially, mainly*. See note 20a above.

35. דַּוְקָא הוֹלְכֵי הָרֶגֶל? מַדּוּעַ? — Of all things, the pedestrians? Why?

דַּוְקָא — *only so, precisely so, deliberately so*. It is one of those words in Hebrew that defy any appropriate English equivalent.

36. מִפְּנֵי שֶׁהֵם חוֹצִים אֶת הָרְחוֹב בִּזְמַן שֶׁיֵּשׁ תְּנוּעָה חֲזָקָה — Because they cross the road when there is heavy traffic.

בִּזְמַן שֶׁיֵּשׁ — *when there is* (*at the time that there is*)

37. מָה עֲלֵיהֶם לַעֲשׂוֹת? לָטוּס? — What are they supposed to do? Fly?

a. מָה עֲלֵיהֶם לַעֲשׂוֹת — *what are they supposed to do?* (*what is on them to do?*)

עַל is often used idiomatically to mean *must, upon*. עָלֶיךָ *it is upon you* עָלֶיךָ לִלְמֹד *it is upon you to study, you must study*.

b. לָטוּס — *to fly*, also טִיסָה *flight* is derived from טוּס *fly* (*v.*)

38. לָאו דַּוְקָא לָטוּס, עֲלֵיהֶם לְחַכּוֹת וְלַעֲבֹר בְּמַעֲבַר־חֲצִיָּה — Not necessarily fly, but they must wait and cross on the crossing.

a.	לָאו דַּוְקָא	*not necessarily so.* See note 27 above.
b.	עֲלֵיהֶם לְחַכּוֹת	*they must wait.* See note 29a above.
c.	מַעֲבַר־חֲצִיָּה	*crossing*
39.	נָכוֹן, מוּטָב לְאַבֵּד רֶגַע בַּחַיִּים מֵאֲשֶׁר חַיִּים בְּרֶגַע	Yes, it is better to lose one moment in life than one life in one moment.
a.	לְאַבֵּד רֶגַע בַּחַיִּים	*to lose one moment in life*
b.	מֵאֲשֶׁר חַיִּים בְּרֶגַע	*rather than a life in one moment*

שִׁעוּר חֲמִישָׁה־עָשָׂר בֵּית קָפֶה בִּרְחוֹב דִּיזֶנְגּוֹף

Lesson fifteen A Coffee House in Dizengoff Street

What happens

Part one

Gil says that he invited Susan to a nearby café. They ordered coffee and apple cake with nuts. They talked about many things and enjoyed each other's company very much. Before returning home they took a walk along Allenby Street.

Part two

בְּבֵית הַקָּפֶה The Coffee House

Susan and Gil decide to go to a café. They choose one that is known for its good service and reasonable prices. They order coffee and apple cake.

אֵיפֹה הַגְּלִידָה שֶׁהִזְמַנְתִּי? Where is the Ice Cream that I ordered?

Gil orders ice cream. He tells Susan that he met Yaakov who told him that Mr. Friedman had arrived in the country for a visit and that he looks well.

Part three

הָאוּנִיבֶרְסִיטָה The University

Gil suggests to Susan that they sit outside the coffee house. He tells her that they are not far from the Knesset.

Notes

Part one

1.	אֶתְמוֹל כַּאֲשֶׁר חָזַרְתִּי מֵהַצָּבָא	Yesterday, when I returned from the army,
	אֶתְמוֹל	*yesterday*

2.	פָּגַשְׁתִּי אֶת סוּזָן בְּבֵיתֵנוּ	I met Susan in our house.
	בְּבֵיתֵנוּ	*in our house*
3.	לְאַחַר חִלּוּפֵי בְּרָכוֹת הִצַּעְתִּי לָהּ לָצֵאת לְבֵית־קָפֶה	After we greeted each other, I suggested that we go out to a coffee house.
a.	לְאַחַר חִלּוּפֵי בְּרָכוֹת	*after an exchange of greetings*
b.	הִצַּעְתִּי לָהּ	*I suggested to her*
c.	בֵּית־קָפֶה	*coffee house*
4.	בְּבֵית הַקָּפֶה הִזְמַנְתִּי קָפֶה לִשְׁנֵינוּ	In the coffee house I ordered coffee for both of us.
	לִשְׁנֵינוּ	*for both of us* שְׁנֵינוּ *two* שְׁנַיִם *both of us*
5.	סוּזָן הִזְמִינָה אֶסְפְּרֶסוֹ	Susan ordered espresso.
6.	אֲנִי הִזְמַנְתִּי קָפֶה הָפוּךְ	I ordered coffee with milk.
	קָפֶה הָפוּךְ	*coffee with milk* (*coffee turned over*), usually a cup of coffee with about half of it milk.
7.	הַמֶּלְצַר אָמַר שֶׁיֵּשׁ לוֹ עוּגַת תַּפּוּחִים וְעוּגַת גְּבִינָה	The waiter said that there was apple pie and cheesecake.
a.	עוּגַת תַּפּוּחִים	*an apple pie*
b.	עוּגַת גְּבִינָה	*a cheesecake*
8.	שְׁנֵינוּ הִזְמַנּוּ עוּגַת תַּפּוּחִים עִם אֱגוֹזִים	We both ordered apple pie with nuts.
	שְׁנֵינוּ הִזְמַנּוּ	*both of us ordered*
9.	שׂוֹחַחְנוּ עַל הַרְבֵּה דְּבָרִים	We spoke about many things.
	שׂוֹחַחְנוּ	*we spoke, we conversed* שִׂיחָה *conversation*

10.	סוּזָן סִפְּרָה לִי עַל הַחַיִּים בְּאַרְצוֹת הַבְּרִית	Susan told me about life in the United States.
	סִפְּרָה לִי עַל הַחַיִּים	*she told me about the life*
11.	הִיא אוֹהֶבֶת מְאֹד לָשֶׁבֶת בְּבֵית קָפֶה	She likes sitting in a coffee house very much.
	לָשֶׁבֶת	*to sit* from יָשַׁב *sit*
12.	בֵּית הַקָּפֶה הָיָה מָלֵא אֲנָשִׁים	The coffee house was full of people.
a.	בֵּית הַקָּפֶה	*the coffee house*
b.	מָלֵא אֲנָשִׁים	*full of people*
13.	הַזּוּג בַּשֻּׁלְחָן הַסָּמוּךְ שׂוֹחַח בְּקוֹל רָם	The couple at the next table talked loudly.
a.	בַּשֻּׁלְחָן הַסָּמוּךְ	*at the next table*
b.	שׂוֹחַח	*talked, spoke,* referring to *the couple* which is singular
c.	בְּקוֹל רָם	*loudly* (*with a loud voice*)
14.	כֻּלָּם שָׁמְעוּ אֶת תֹּכֶן שִׂיחָתָם. בּוּשָׁה וְחֶרְפָּה!	Everyone heard their conversation. Shame on them!
a.	כֻּלָּם	*all of them* i.e. *the people*
b.	תֹּכֶן שִׂיחָתָם	*contents of their conversation*
c.	בּוּשָׁה וְחֶרְפָּה!	*shame and disgrace*!
15.	בְּשָׁעָה עֶשֶׂר בְּעֵרֶךְ עָזַבְנוּ אֶת הַמָּקוֹם	At approximately 10.00 o'clock we left the place.
16.	טִיַּלְנוּ בִּרְחוֹב אַלֶּנְבִּי שָׁעָה קַלָּה וְחָזַרְנוּ הַבַּיְתָה	We went for a walk for about an hour along Allenby Street and then returned home.
	שָׁעָה קַלָּה	*about an hour, a while* (*a light hour*)

17.	שָׁלוֹם גִּיל, מַה נִּשְׁמָע?	Hello Gil, how are things?
	מַה נִּשְׁמָע?	*How are things (what's heard?)*
18.	בְּסֵדֶר גָּמוּר, בּוֹאִי לִשְׁתּוֹת כּוֹס קָפֶה	Just fine. Come and have a cup of coffee.
	בְּסֵדֶר גָּמוּר	*in perfect order*
	בּוֹאִי לִשְׁתּוֹת	*come to drink*
19.	רַעְיוֹן טוֹב. אֵיפֹה יֵשׁ בַּסְּבִיבָה בֵּית־קָפֶה?	Good idea. Is there a coffee house in the neighbourhood?
a.	רַעְיוֹן טוֹב	*a good idea*
b.	בַּסְּבִיבָה	*in the neighbourhood*
20.	שָׁם בַּפִּנָּה יֵשׁ בֵּית־קָפֶה טוֹב	There's a good coffee house on the corner.
a.	שָׁם בַּפִּנָּה	*there at the corner*
b.	בֵּית־קָפֶה טוֹב	*a good coffee house.* This phrase could mean *a house of good coffee* or *a good house of coffee* or *a good coffee house* as here. The meaning depends on the context.
21.	פַּעֲמַיִם קָפֶה, בְּבַקָּשָׁה	Two coffees, please.
	פַּעֲמַיִם קָפֶה	*twice coffee.* Gil ordered two cups of coffee.
22.	בִּשְׁבִילִי קָפֶה הָפוּךְ	Coffee with milk for me.
23.	בִּשְׁבִילִי מַשְׁקֶה קַר, בְּבַקָּשָׁה	For me, a cold drink, please.
	מַשְׁקֶה קַר	*a cold drink*
24.	אֵיזֶה עוּגוֹת יֵשׁ לָכֶם?	What kind of cakes do you have?
25.	יֵשׁ לָנוּ עוּגַת תַּפּוּחִים וְעוּגַת גְּבִינָה	We have apple pie and cheesecake.

26.	עוּגַת תַּפּוּחִים בְּבַקָּשָׁה.	Apple pie, please
27.	אֵינֶנִּי שׁוֹתֶה עֲדַיִן. הָעוּגָה תָּמִיד הָרִאשׁוֹנָה בַּתּוֹר	I won't drink it yet. The cake always comes first.
a.	אֵינֶנִּי שׁוֹתֶה עֲדַיִן	*I am not drinking yet*
b.	הָרִאשׁוֹנָה בַּתּוֹר	*comes first (first in the queue)*
28.	אֲנִי מְחַכֶּה כְּבָר חֲצִי שָׁעָה וַעֲדַיִן לֹא קִבַּלְתִּי אֶת הַגְּלִידָה שֶׁהִזְמַנְתִּי	I've already waited half an hour and I still haven't received the ice cream I ordered.
a.	כְּבָר חֲצִי שָׁעָה	*already half an hour*
b.	הַגְּלִידָה שֶׁהִזְמַנְתִּי	*the ice cream that I have ordered*
29.	אֲנִי מִצְטַעֵר, אֲדוֹנִי, אֵיזוֹ גְּלִידָה אַתָּה רוֹצֶה?	I'm sorry, sir. What kind of ice cream did you want?
30.	וָנִיל שׁוֹקוֹלַד בְּבַקָּשָׁה	Chocolate and vanilla, please
31.	סוּזָן, נַחֲשִׁי אֶת מִי פָּגַשְׁתִּי הַבֹּקֶר?	Susan, guess whom I met this morning?
	נַחֲשִׁי אֶת מִי פָּגַשְׁתִּי	*guess whom I met?*
32.	הוּא סִפֵּר לִי שֶׁמַּר פְרִידְמַן נִמְצָא בָּאָרֶץ	He told me that Mr. Friedman is in Israel.
	נִמְצָא בָּאָרֶץ	*he is in Israel (he is found in the land)*
33.	מָתַי הוּא הִגִּיעַ?	When did he arrive?
34.	בַּשָּׁבוּעַ שֶׁעָבַר	Last week.
	בַּשָּׁבוּעַ שֶׁעָבַר	*last week (in the week that passed)*
35.	אֵיךְ הוּא נִרְאֶה?	How does he look?
	נִרְאֶה	*is seen*

36.	בּוֹאִי נֵשֵׁב בַּחוּץ בְּבֵית הַקָּפֶה	Let's sit outside the coffee house.
	נֵשֵׁב בַּחוּץ	*we shall sit outside* but בּוֹאִי נֵשֵׁב *come, let us sit*
37.	מַהִי הַמַּצֵּבָה שָׁם בְּסוֹף הָרְחוֹב?	What's the monument at the end of the street?
	מַהִי הַמַּצֵּבָה	*what is the monument?*
38.	זוֹ מַצֶּבֶת זִכָּרוֹן לְחַלְלֵי מִלְחֶמֶת הַשִּׁחְרוּר	It's a memorial to those who fell in the War of Liberation.
a.	זוֹ	*this* (*f.*) same as זֹאת.
b.	מַצֶּבֶת זִכָּרוֹן	*a memorial, monument*
c.	חַלְלֵי מִלְחֶמֶת הַשִּׁחְרוּר	*the fallen of the War of Liberation.* The 1948 war between Israel and the Arabs, when Israel declared its independence, is known as The War of Independence.
39.	מַדּוּעַ הֵם קוֹרְאִים לַחֵלֶק הַזֶּה שֶׁל יְרוּשָׁלַיִם הַקַּמְפּוּס?	Why do they call this part of Jerusalem the Campus?
	הַקַּמְפּוּס	*The Campus*
40.	הַקַּמְפּוּס הוּא שֶׁטַח הָאוּנִיבֶרְסִיטָה	The Campus is the University area.
41.	בְּמֶרְחָק קָטָן מִפֹּה. אִם אַתְּ רוֹצָה נֵלֵךְ לְשָׁם אַחַר כָּךְ	A short distance from here. If you like, we can go there later.
a.	בְּמֶרְחָק קָטָן מִפֹּה	*a short distance from here*
b.	נֵלֵךְ לְשָׁם אַחַר כָּךְ	*we shall go there afterwards*

42.	כָּל הַסְּטוּדֶנְטִים נִרְאִים רְצִינִיִּים וּמֻדְאָגִים	All the students look so serious and worried.
a.	נִרְאִים	*are seen*
b.	רְצִינִיִּים וּמֻדְאָגִים	*serious and worried*
43.	יֵשׁ סִבָּה לְכָךְ. הֵם עֲסוּקִים בַּהֲכָנוֹת לַבְּחִינוֹת וּבְיִשְׂרָאֵל הַבְּחִינוֹת לֹא קַלּוֹת	There's a reason for that. They are all busy preparing for exams, and in Israel exams aren't easy.
a.	יֵשׁ סִבָּה לְכָךְ	*there is a reason for that*
b.	עֲסוּקִים בַּהֲכָנוֹת	*they are busy with preparations*

What happens

Part one

Mr. Tal describes the supermarket at five o'clock in the afternoon. It is full of shoppers. Yitzhak, one of the assistants, is serving Mrs. Tal who buys cheese, eggs, wine, honey, rolls, olives and sausages. She pays IL. 30. At the grocer's she buys challas for the Sabbath.

Part two

בַּחֲנוּת הַמַּכֹּלֶת At the Grocer's

Ruth is in the grocery store and the shopkeeper is serving her. She orders her groceries from a list she has prepared. She asks for sugar, coffee, rice, cheese and marmalade. She doesn't want to buy anything else since she has to carry the heavy basket by herself.

דָּנִי הוֹלֵךְ לַסּוּפֶּרְמַרְקֶט Danny goes to the Supermarket

Danny doesn't want to go shopping but Ruth persuades him. She has prepared a list for him which he reads aloud to make sure everything is clear. Ruth tells him to hurry up because the shop will close in a quarter of an hour.

Part three

בַּחֲנוּת הַיְרָקוֹת At the Greengrocer's

Ruth is buying fruit and vegetables. She finds the tomatoes expensive but the grapes are unusually cheap since they are in season.
She says she does not need any cucumbers or carrots.

Notes

Part one

1.	קְנִיּוֹת בַּסּוּפֶּרְמַרְקֶט	Shopping at the supermarket (Purchases at the supermarket) קְנִיּוֹת *purchases* from קָנָה *buy*
2.	בְּשָׁעָה חָמֵשׁ אַחַר הַצָּהֳרַיִם הַסּוּפֶּרְמַרְקֶט מָלֵא אֲנָשִׁים	At 5.00 in the afternoon the supermarket is very crowded.
3.	יִצְחָק, אַחַד הַחֶנְוָנִים, שׁוֹאֵל אֶת גְּבֶ׳ טַל בַּמֶּה הוּא יָכוֹל לַעֲזוֹר לָהּ.	Isaac, one of the employees, asks Mrs. Tal if he can help her.
	אַחַד הַחֶנְוָנִים	*one of the shopkeepers.* חֶנְוָנִי *shopkeeper, one who works in a shop.* Note חֲנוּת *shop.*
4.	הִיא אוֹמֶרֶת שֶׁהִיא רוֹצָה מָאתַיִם גְּרַם גְּבִינָה	She asks for two hundred grams of cheese.
a.	מָאתַיִם	*two hundred*, מֵאָה *hundred*. Note the ending ַיִם for DUAL denoting *two* or things that come in pairs such as trousers, eyes etc. See Grammar Appendix, Note 13.
b.	גְּרַם	*gram*. In Israel, the metric (European) system is used. One kilogram (kg) is equivalent to 2.2 pounds. A kilogram has 1,000 grams. One ounce is about 28.3 grams.
5.	גְּבֶ׳ טַל שׁוֹאֶלֶת אִם הַבֵּיצִים טְרִיּוֹת	Mrs. Tal asks if the eggs are fresh.
	אִם הַבֵּיצִים טְרִיּוֹת	*if the eggs are fresh* בֵּיצָה (f.) *egg*, בֵּיצִים *eggs* (*f.*). טְרִיּוֹת *fresh* is also feminine. Appendix, 11, 12.

6.	הַחֶנְוָנִי עוֹנֶה שֶׁהוּא קִבֵּל אוֹתָן בְּאוֹתוֹ הַיּוֹם	The shopkeeper answers that he got them on that same day.
a.	הַחֶנְוָנִי עוֹנֶה שֶׁהוּא קִבֵּל אוֹתָן	*the shopkeeper answers that he has received them*
b.	אוֹתָן	*them (f.)* referring to *the eggs.*
c.	בְּאוֹתוֹ הַיּוֹם	*on that same day (on it the day)*
7.	גְּבֶ׳ טַל מְבַקֶּשֶׁת תְּרֵיסַר בֵּיצִים	Mrs. Tal asks for a dozen eggs.
	תְּרֵיסַר בֵּיצִים	*a dozen eggs*
8.	גְּבֶ׳ טַל קוֹנָה יֵינוֹת	Mrs. Tal buys all kinds of wines. יֵינוֹת *wines* i.e. *all kinds of wine* יַיִן *wine*
9.	הַכֹּל עָלָה לָהּ שְׁלֹשִׁים לִירוֹת	All together it cost thirty pounds.
10.	בַּמַּכֹּלֶת הִיא קוֹנָה חַלּוֹת לִכְבוֹד שַׁבָּת	At the grocer's she buys Sabbath bread (challas) for the Sabbath.
a.	בַּמַּכֹּלֶת	*at the grocer's.* The word מַכֹּלֶת is probably associated with אָכַל *eat.*
b.	חַלּוֹת	*challas.* Plaited bread made from white flour prepared specially for the Sabbath.
11.	עָלֶיהָ לִזְכֹּר לִקְנוֹת פְּרָחִים בַּדֶּרֶךְ הַבַּיְתָה	On her way home she has to remember to buy flowers.
	עָלֶיהָ לִזְכֹּר	*she must remember.* For this special use of עַל as *must,* see Lesson 14, note 29a.
12.	דָּנִי אוֹהֵב פְּרָחִים בַּבַּיִת	Danny likes flowers in the house.

13.	אֲנִי צְרִיכָה דְּבָרִים רַבִּים	I need many things.
14.	יֵשׁ לָךְ רְשִׁימָה?	Have you got a list?
15.	טוֹב מְאֹד. מָה הַמִּצְרָךְ הָרִאשׁוֹן בָּרְשִׁימָה?	Very good, what is the first item on the list?
	מִצְרָךְ	*commodity, item needed* from צָרִיךְ *must, need*
16.	תֵּן לִי בְּבַקָּשָׁה שְׁלֹשָׁה קִילוֹ סֻכָּר	Give me three kilos of sugar, please.
17.	וּמָאתַיִם גְּרַם גְּבִינָה	And two hundred grams of cheese.
18.	גְּבִינָה לְבָנָה רָזָה	Low calorie cottage cheese.
19.	בְּוַדַּאי, יֵשׁ לָנוּ רִבַּת תַּפּוּזִים, רִבַּת שְׁזִיפִים וְרִבַּת תּוּת שָׂדֶה	Of course, we have marmalade, plum jam and strawberry jam.
a.	רִבַּת תַּפּוּזִים	*marmalade (jam of oranges).*
b.	תַּפּוּזִים	*oranges,* abbreviation of תַּפּוּחֵי זָהָב *golden apples* i.e. *oranges*
c.	תּוּת שָׂדֶה	*strawberry (berry of the field)*
20.	עוֹד מַשֶּׁהוּ, גְּבֶ׳ טַל?	Is there anything else, Mrs. Tal?
	מַשֶּׁהוּ	*something,* same as מַה שֶּׁהוּא *whatever it is*
21.	וַאֲנִי צְרִיכָה לָשֵׂאת אוֹתוֹ בְּעַצְמִי	And I have to carry it myself.
a.	לָשֵׂאת	*to carry*

b. בְּעַצְמִי *myself.* Other forms:
בְּעַצְמְךָ *yourself* בְּעַצְמָהּ *herself*
See Grammar Appendix, Notes 20, 25.

22. אַתָּה רוֹצֶה לָלֶכֶת לִקְנִיּוֹת בַּסּוּפֶּרְמַרְקֶט — Would you like to go shopping in the supermarket?

23. לָמָּה תָּמִיד אֲנִי? מִרְיָם לֹא יְכוֹלָה לָלֶכֶת? — Why always me? Can't Miriam go?

24. לְמִרְיָם יֵשׁ הַרְבֵּה שִׁעוּרִים אֲבָל אֲנִי מַרְשָׁה לְךָ לִקְנוֹת בַּדֶּרֶךְ גְּלִידָה — Miriam has a lot of homework, but I'll let you buy ice cream on the way.
לְמִרְיָם יֵשׁ *Miriam has.* See Appendix, Note 65.

25. אֲנִי מְכִינָה רְשִׁימָה. הִנֵּה גָּמַרְתִּי. קְרָא אוֹתָהּ — I am making a list. Here, I have finished. Read it.
a. אֲנִי מְכִינָה *I am preparing (f.).* The principal forms are מֵכִין, מְכִינָה, מְכִינִים, מְכִינוֹת
Similarly, the principal forms of מֵבִין *understand* are מֵבִין, מְבִינָה, מְבִינִים, מְבִינוֹת
b. גָּמַרְתִּי *I have finished.* For the different forms of the past tense, see Appendix, Note 29.

26. אֵיזֶה לֶחֶם אַתָּה אוֹהֵב יוֹתֵר? — What kind of bread do you like best?
אַתָּה אוֹהֵב יוֹתֵר *you like best (you like most).*

27. קְנֵה לֶחֶם לָבָן. תַּמְשִׁיךְ לִקְרֹא אֶת הָרְשִׁימָה — Buy white bread. Continue reading the list.
תַּמְשִׁיךְ לִקְרֹא *continue reading (continue to read)*

28. בְּהֶחְלֵט — Definitely, decidedly.

29. הִנֵּה הַכֶּסֶף, לֵךְ מַהֵר, סוֹגְרִים בְּעוֹד רֶבַע שָׁעָה — Here's the money, and run. It will be closed in fifteen minutes.
a. סוֹגְרִים *it will be closed (closing)*
b. בְּעוֹד רֶבַע שָׁעָה *in a quarter of an hour*

Part three

30. אֲנִי צְרִיכָה יְרָקוֹת וּפֵרוֹת — I need vegetables and fruit.

31. הָעַגְבָנִיּוֹת עוֹלוֹת שָׁלֹשׁ לִירוֹת הַקִּילוֹ — The tomatoes are three pounds per kilo.
a. הָעַגְבָנִיּוֹת *the tomatoes* עַגְבָנִיָּה *a tomato*
b. שָׁלֹשׁ לִירוֹת הַקִּילוֹ *three pounds a kilo.* Note the Hebrew הַקִּילוֹ *the kilo.*

32. מַדּוּעַ כָּל כָּךְ בְּיֹקֶר? — Why so expensive?
בְּיֹקֶר *expensive*

33. זֶה מִין מֻבְחָר — They are the best kind.
מִין מֻבְחָר *choice kind, selected kind*

34. כָּרֶגַע קִבַּלְתִּי עֲנָבִים טוֹבִים מְאֹד — I have just received good grapes.
a. כָּרֶגַע *as of this moment, just*
b. כָּרֶגַע קִבַּלְתִּי *I have just received*

35. קָשֶׁה לִי לְהַאֲמִין שֶׁבַּחֲצִי לִירָה הַקִּילוֹ הָעֲנָבִים טוֹבִים מְאֹד — I can hardly believe that for half a pound per kilo the grapes are good.

קָשֶׁה לִי לְהַאֲמִין *it is difficult for me to believe*

In Hebrew, often when adjectives such as טוֹב *good* קַל *easy* חָשׁוּב *important* אֶפְשָׁר *possible* appear at the beginning of the sentence, they are translated into English as *it is good, it is easy, it is important etc.*

36. עַכְשָׁו עוֹנַת הָעֲנָבִים. יֵשׁ הַרְבֵּה עֲנָבִים וְהַמְּחִירִים יוֹרְדִים — It is the grape season now. There are a lot of grapes so the price decreases.

עַכְשָׁו עוֹנַת הָעֲנָבִים *It is the grape season now.*

37. תֵּן לִי רַק קִילוֹ אֶחָד — Give me only one kilo.

תֵּן לִי *give me (imp.).* Other forms are

תְּנִי לִי *give me (f. s.)*

תְּנוּ לִי *give me (m. p.)*

38. אִתְּכֶן הַנָּשִׁים קָשֶׁה לְהִסְתַּדֵּר — It is hard to get along with you women. (With you women it is difficult to get along.)

a. אִתְּכֶן *with you (f. p.)*

b. נָשִׁים *women* אִשָּׁה *woman*

c. קָשֶׁה לְהִסְתַּדֵּר *it is difficult to get along.*

39. אֲנִי מְמַהֶרֶת לְאִטְלִיז לִקְנוֹת בָּשָׂר, שָׁלוֹם — I am hurrying to the butcher's to buy meat. Good-bye.

אִטְלִיז *butcher's*

Lesson seventeen — At the Railway Station

What happens

Part one

Susan talks about her trip to Jerusalem by train with Mike and Miriam. She and Mike arrived at the station at the last minute and found Miriam waiting by the ticket office. She had bought return tickets for them. The train was about to leave in three minutes. Miriam found three empty seats.

Part two

הַמִּזְוָדוֹת The Suitcases

Gil is putting suitcases on the rack. He comments on the weight of Miriam's suitcase which is heavy because she always takes so many clothes with her. Susan has only a small bag with her bathing suit. She hopes to go swimming.

שִׂיחָה בָּרַכֶּבֶת A Conversation on the Train

A passenger takes the seat next to Mike and asks him to close the window because it is very windy and he has a cold. Mike, who is very warm, closes the window but comments to his friends that sick people should stay at home. Gil says that one should be considerate towards people who are not well.

Part three

חֲזָרָה מֵחֻפְשָׁה Returning from a Holiday

Gil greets Susan who has returned from spending her vacation on a kibbutz. She says that her vacation was wonderful but the trip back was terrible because the train was overcrowded. However, she enjoyed eating in the dining car.

Notes

Part one

1.	אֶתְמֹל נָסַעְנוּ בָּרַכֶּבֶת לִירוּשָׁלַיִם	We went to Jerusalem by train yesterday.
	נָסַעְנוּ בָּרַכֶּבֶת	*we travelled by train.* Note the following:
	רַכֶּבֶת	*train*
	אֳנִיָּה	*ship*
	אֲוִירוֹן, מָטוֹס	*aeroplane*
	מְכוֹנִית	*car, bus*
	אוֹטוֹבּוּס	*bus*
	מוֹנִית	*taxi*
2.	הַנְּסִיעָה זוֹלָה וְנוֹחָה	The trip is inexpensive and comfortable.
3.	לְתַחֲנַת הָרַכֶּבֶת הִגַּעְנוּ בָּרֶגַע הָאַחֲרוֹן	We arrived at the railway station at the last minute.
a.	לְתַחֲנַת הָרַכֶּבֶת הִגַּעְנוּ	*we arrived at the railway station* Hebrew *to*, English *at*
b.	בָּרֶגַע הָאַחֲרוֹן	*at the last moment.*
4.	בֶּאֱמֶת כִּמְעַט אֵחַרְנוּ	The truth is that we were almost late.
5.	מִן הַמָּלוֹן יָצָאנוּ מְאֻחָר	We left the hotel late.
6.	לָקַחְנוּ אִתָּנוּ רַק חֲבִילָה אַחַת וּמִזְוָדָה אַחַת	We took only one package and one suitcase with us.
7.	מִרְיָם חִכְּתָה לָנוּ בְּתַחֲנַת הָרַכֶּבֶת	Miriam waited for us at the railway station.
	חִכְּתָה לָנוּ	*she waited for us*
8.	מָצָאנוּ אוֹתָהּ לְיַד אֶשְׁנַב הַקֻּפָּה	We found her near the ticket office.
	מָצָאנוּ אוֹתָהּ	*we found her*

9.	מִרְיָם קָנְתָה בִּשְׁבִילֵנוּ כַּרְטִיסִים הָלוֹךְ וָשׁוֹב	Miriam bought return tickets for us.
	קָנְתָה בִּשְׁבִילֵנוּ	*she bought for us.*
	כַּרְטִיסִים הָלוֹךְ וָשׁוֹב	*return tickets* (*tickets going and returning*)
10.	הָרַכֶּבֶת עָמְדָה לָצֵאת תּוֹךְ שָׁלֹשׁ דַּקּוֹת	The train was supposed to leave in three minutes.
a.	עָמְדָה לָצֵאת	*it (f.) was about to leave (stood to go out)* *it (f.)* referring to רַכֶּבֶת (f.) *train.*
b.	תּוֹךְ שָׁלֹשׁ דַּקּוֹת	*within three minutes*
11.	מִרְיָם מָצְאָה שְׁלֹשָׁה מְקוֹמוֹת פְּנוּיִים	Miriam found three empty seats.
	שְׁלֹשָׁה מְקוֹמוֹת	*three seats* מָקוֹם *place, seat* מְקוֹמוֹת *places*
12.	שַׂמְנוּ אֶת הַחֲבִילָה וְהַמִּזְוָדָה עַל הַמַּדָּף	We put the package and the suitcase on the rack.
a.	שַׂמְנוּ	*we placed, we put.* For the verb שִׂים *put,* see Grammar Appendix, Note 51.
b.	מַדָּף	*rack,* also *bookshelf*
13.	הַמּוֹשָׁבִים הָיוּ נוֹחִים מְאֹד. הֵם הָיוּ מְרֻפָּדִים וְרַכִּים	The seats were very comfortable. They were upholstered and soft.
a.	הַמּוֹשָׁבִים	*the seats* from יָשַׁב *sit.* When in Israel, you will hear of the cooperative agricultural settlement known as מוֹשָׁב Also מוֹשָׁבָה *settlement*
b.		A Note on the Moshav מוֹשָׁב The *Moshav* is a cooperative smallholders' village, based on principles of mutual aid

and equality of opportunity. Each member has a farm worked by himself and his family but produce is sold, and supplies and equipment are bought through the central cooperative. The first, and typical Moshav is *Nahalal*, established in 1921, in the Jezreel Valley.

c. הָיוּ מְרֻפָּדִים — *they were upholstered and soft.* For the verb הָיָה *be* see Grammar Appendix, Notes 57, 64.

14. אֲנִי יָשַׁבְתִּי עַל יַד הַחַלּוֹן — I sat near the window.

15. נִשְׁמְעָה צְפִירָה וְהָרַכֶּבֶת זָזָה — A whistle was heard and the train moved.

נִשְׁמְעָה צְפִירָה — *the whistle was heard*

Part two

16. בֹּאוּ נֵשֵׁב פֹּה. מִרְיָם וְסוּזָן, אַתֶּן שֵׁבְנָה כָּאן — Let's sit here, Miriam and Susan, sit right here.

a. בֹּאוּ לָשֶׁבֶת פֹּה — *come, let us sit here*

b. אַתֶּן שֵׁבְנָה כָּאן — *you (f.p.) sit here*

The imperative of יָשַׁב *sit:*

sit! שֵׁב, שְׁבִי, שְׁבוּ, שֵׁבְנָה

Note that in this sentence we used two words for *here* כָּאן, פֹּה

17. שֶׁל מִי הַמִּזְוָדָה הַזֹּאת? — Whose suitcase is this?

שֶׁל מִי — *whose?* שֶׁל מִי הַסֵּפֶר הַזֶּה *Whose book is this?*

Also לְמִי *whose?*

18. בַּטִּיּוּלִים הִיא מַחֲלִיפָה אֶת בְּגָדֶיהָ מִלְיוֹן פַּעַם — She changes her clothes a million times on trips.

מִלְיוֹן פַּעַם — *a million times* Hebrew פַּעַם *time (s.)*

19. הֵיכָן הַמִּזְוָדָה שֶׁלָּךְ? — Where's your suitcase?

20. שֶׁלִּי כָּאן, אֲנִי הֵבֵאתִי אִתִּי רַק בֶּגֶד־יָם — Mine's here, I only brought a swimsuit with me.

a. שֶׁלִּי כָּאן — *mine is here*

b. הֵבֵאתִי אִתִּי — *I brought with me*

21. אֲנִי מְקַוָּה שֶׁאֶפְשָׁר יִהְיֶה לִשְׂחוֹת — I hope that it will be possible to swim.

שֶׁאֶפְשָׁר יִהְיֶה לִשְׂחוֹת — *that it will be possible to swim*

22. בָּרוּר שֶׁאֶפְשָׁר יִהְיֶה לִשְׂחוֹת — Of course, it will be possible to swim.

בָּרוּר שֶׁאֶפְשָׁר — *it is obvious that it is possible*

23. עוֹד הַיּוֹם? — Is there still time today? (yet today)

24. כֵּן, אֲנִי חוֹשֵׁב שֶׁכֵּן — Yes, I think so. (I think that it is yes.)

25. יֹפִי! — Great! (See Lesson 2, note 31)

26. כֵּן, אֲדוֹנִי, הַכֹּל פָּנוּי מִלְּבַד הַמָּקוֹם הַזֶּה שֶׁהוּא תָּפוּס — Yes, sir, they're all vacant except this place (which is occupied).

a. מִלְּבַד הַמָּקוֹם הַזֶּה — *except this place*

Note the following:

לְבַד *alone*

לְבַדִּי *by myself*

מִלְּבַד *except, apart from*

b. תָּפוּס — *occupied* but פָּנוּי *unoccupied, free*

27. אֶפְשָׁר לִסְגֹּר אֶת הַחַלּוֹן יֶלֶד? — Can you close the window, young man?

28. אוֹ, לָמָּה? הֲרֵי כָּל כָּךְ חַם — Why, is it so hot?

a.	לָמָּה	*what for?, why* also מַדּוּעַ
b.	הֲרֵי	here it is the same as הִנֵּה *behold*
29.	אָמְנָם חַם כָּאן, אֲבָל יֵשׁ רוּחַ פְּרָצִים וְאֵינֶנִּי מַרְגִּישׁ בְּטוֹב	It's really hot here but there's a draught and I don't feel well.
a.	רוּחַ פְּרָצִים	*draught*
b.	אֵינֶנִּי מַרְגִּישׁ בְּטוֹב	*I don't feel well*
30.	מַה יֵּשׁ לְךָ?	What is the matter with you? (What do you have?)
31.	אֲנִי מְצֻנָּן	I've caught a cold.
32.	רֹב תּוֹדוֹת יֶלֶד, וְאַל תִּכְעַס עָלַי	Thank you very much, young man, and don't be angry with me.
a.	רֹב תּוֹדוֹת	*many thanks*
b.	אַל תִּכְעַס עָלַי	*don't be angry with me (on me)*
33.	אֲנָשִׁים מְצֻנָּנִים צְרִיכִים לְהִשָּׁאֵר בַּמִּטָּה	People with colds should stay in bed.
	צְרִיכִים לְהִשָּׁאֵר בַּמִּטָּה	*should stay in bed (in the bed)*
34.	אֲנִי מֵת מֵחֹם. בֹּאוּ נִגַּשׁ לַמִּזְנוֹן לִשְׁתּוֹת מַשֶּׁהוּ קַר	I am dying from heat, let's go to the dining car to drink something cold.
a.	מֵת מֵחֹם	*dying from fever (heat)*
b.	מִזְנוֹן	*buffet, food counter, refreshment car* (on the train)
35.	טוֹב, בְּסֵדֶר, אוּלַי שָׁם לֹא יָבֹאוּ אֵלֵינוּ בְּבַקָּשׁוֹת כָּאֵלֶּה	Good, perhaps there people won't come to us with requests like that.
	יָבוֹאוּ אֵלֵינוּ	*they will come to us*

36.	לֹא יָפֶה לְהִתְנַהֵג כָּךְ. צָרִיךְ לְהִתְחַשֵּׁב בָּאֲנָשִׁים וּבִמְיֻחָד בַּאֲנָשִׁים חוֹלִים	It's not nice to behave this way. One has to be considerate of people, especially sick people.
	לְהִתְנַהֵג כָּךְ	*to behave this way*
37.	בֶּאֱמֶת, לֹא קָרָה כְּלוּם. הוּא רַק בִּקֵּשׁ לִסְגֹּר אֶת הַחַלּוֹן	Actually, nothing happened. He only asked him to close the window.
	הוּא רַק בִּקֵּשׁ	*he only requested*
38.	מַה כָּל הָרַעַשׁ הַזֶּה?	What's all this fuss (noise)?

Part three

39.	חֲזָרָה מֵחֻפְשָׁה	Back home from vacation.
40.	הַאִם נֶהֱנֵית מֵחֻפְשַׁת הַפֶּסַח בַּקִּבּוּץ?	Did you enjoy the Passover vacation on the kibbutz?
a.	הַאִם נֶהֱנֵית מֵחֻפְשַׁת הַפֶּסַח	*Did you enjoy the Passover vacation?*
b.	נֶהֱנָה מִ־	*enjoy*
c.	פֶּסַח	*Passover* (See Appendix, Note 18)
41.	חֲבָל רַק שֶׁהַחֻפְשָׁה עַצְמָהּ הָיְתָה יוֹתֵר מִדַּי קְצָרָה	It's just a pity that the vacation itself was too short.
a.	שֶׁהַחֻפְשָׁה עַצְמָהּ	*that the vacation itself*
b.	יוֹתֵר מִדַּי קְצָרָה	*too short*
42.	אֶתְמוֹל בַּלַּיְלָה בְּשָׁעָה אַחַת־עֶשְׂרֵה	Last night at eleven o'clock.
43.	אַל תַּזְכִּיר לִי אוֹתָהּ. הַנְּסִיעָה הָיְתָה אֲיֻמָּה	Don't remind me of it, the trip was horrible.
	אַל תַּזְכִּיר לִי אוֹתָהּ	*don't remind me of it*

the word תַּזְכִּיר *remind* is related to זָכַר *remember*. אַל is used as a negative with an imperative. זְכֹר *remember!* (*imp.*)

אַל תִּזְכֹּר	*don't remember!* (*imp. neg.*)
תַּזְכִּיר	*you will remind*
אַל תַּזְכִּיר	*don't remind* (*imp. neg.*)

44.	הָרַכֶּבֶת הַמְּהִירָה הָיְתָה מְלֵאָה. אֲנָשִׁים עִשְּׁנוּ וְהָיָה חַם מְאֹד	The express train was full. People were smoking and it was very hot.
a.	הָרַכֶּבֶת הַמְּהִירָה	*the express train*
b.	אֲנָשִׁים עִשְּׁנוּ	*people smoked, were smoking*
45.	אָכַלְתִּי אֲרוּחַת עֶרֶב בִּקְרוֹן הָאֹכֶל	I ate dinner in the dining car.
	בִּקְרוֹן הָאֹכֶל	*in the dining car*
46.	כֵּן, זוֹ דֶּרֶךְ נְעִימָה לְבַלּוֹת חֲצִי שָׁעָה	Yes, that's a nice way to spend half an hour.
	דֶּרֶךְ נְעִימָה לְבַלּוֹת	*a pleasant way to spend* (time)

שִׁעוּר שְׁמוֹנָה־עָשָׂר   בְּתַחֲנַת הָאוֹטוֹבּוּסִים הַמֶּרְכָּזִית

Lesson eighteen   In the Central Bus Station

What happens

Part one

Mr. Berman describes the scene at the bus station. He stands in a long queue to buy tickets to Jerusalem. The bus arrives, they board and find good seats near the window. Mr. Berman reads the notices posted in the bus and looks out of the window.

Part two

הַנֶּהָג The Driver

David wants a ticket to Holon and change of IL.10. The bus is very crowded. The driver wants to shut the door, but David tells him to open it for a woman and her child.

בַּתּוֹר לָאוֹטוֹבּוּס In the Bus Queue

David is waiting for the bus, he thinks that several people are trying to jump the queue and protests. A passenger explains that some people have the right to enter without waiting in the queue.

Part three

מוֹנִית A Taxi

David takes a taxi to Bialik St. He urges the driver to go faster but is told that it is against the law. They arrive. David pays and asks for a receipt.

Notes

Part one

1.	אֲנַחְנוּ נוֹסְעִים לִירוּשָׁלַיִם מִן הַתַּחֲנָה הַמֶּרְכָּזִית בְּתֵל־אָבִיב	We are travelling to Jerusalem from the central station in Tel-Aviv.

תַּחֲנָה מֶרְכָּזִית — *Central Station*, referring to the *Central Bus Station* in Tel-Aviv, a very busy and bustling place from early in the morning until late at night. The trip by bus or car from Tel-Aviv to Jerusalem takes about 90 minutes.

2. בַּתַּחֲנָה רַעַשׁ — It is noisy at the station. (At the station there is noise.)

3. מְכוֹנִית בָּאָה וּמְכוֹנִית יוֹצֵאת — Buses come in and go out.

a. מְכוֹנִית — *car*, also *bus*.

b. יוֹצֵאת — *going out* (*f.*) from יָצָא *go out*

4. אֲנָשִׁים רַבִּים, נָשִׁים וִילָדִים הוֹלְכִים וְרָצִים, הוֹלְכִים וּמְמַהֲרִים — Many men, women and children are walking, running and hurrying.

a. אֲנָשִׁים נָשִׁים, יְלָדִים — Note these plurals of אִישׁ *man* אִשָּׁה *woman* and יֶלֶד *boy* respectively.

b. רָצִים — *running* from רוץ *run* but רוֹצִים *want* from רָצָה *want, wish, desire* (*v.*).

5. אֲנִי הָלַכְתִּי אֶל הַקֻּפָּה לִקְנוֹת כַּרְטִיסִים וְחַנָּה הָלְכָה לִקְנוֹת עִתּוֹן — I went to the ticket office to buy tickets and Hannah went to buy a paper.

קֻפָּה — *ticket office*

6. הַתּוֹר עַל יַד הַקֻּפָּה הָיָה אָרֹךְ — The queue at the ticket office was long.

7. סוֹף סוֹף הִגַּעְתִּי לַקֻּפָּה — Finally, I got to the ticket window.

8. נָתַתִּי לַקֻּפַּאי שֵׁשׁ לִירוֹת וּבִקַּשְׁתִּי כַּרְטִיסִים לִירוּשָׁלַיִם — I gave the cashier six pounds and asked for tickets to Jerusalem.

a. נָתַתִּי — *I gave* from נָתַן *give*

b. לַקֻּפַּאי — *to the cashier* from קֻפָּה *cash box*

c. בִּקַּשְׁתִּי כַּרְטִיסִים — *I requested tickets*

9. הָאוֹטוֹבּוּס הִגִּיעַ. אֲנַחְנוּ עָלִינוּ לָאוֹטוֹבּוּס — The bus arrived. We boarded the bus.

עָלִינוּ לָאוֹטוֹבּוּס — *we boarded (went up) the bus*

10. מָצָאנוּ מָקוֹם טוֹב עַל יַד הַחַלּוֹן — We found a good place near the window.

11. אֲנִי אוֹהֵב לְהִסְתַּכֵּל בַּנּוֹף — I love to look at the scenery.

לְהִסְתַּכֵּל בַּנּוֹף — *to look at the scenery* (*landscape*). Hebrew: *watch in*

12. בֵּינְתַיִם קָרָאתִי אֶת הַמּוֹדָעוֹת בָּאוֹטוֹבּוּס — In the meantime, I read the signs in the bus.

a. בֵּינְתַיִם — *in the meantime*

b. הַמּוֹדָעוֹת — *the signs, advertisements.* The word מוֹדָעָה *an advertisement* is from יָדַע *know.*

13. "אָסוּר לְעַשֵּׁן", "אָסוּר לְדַבֵּר עִם הַנֶּהָג", "אָסוּר לְהוֹצִיא אֶת הָרֹאשׁ וְאֶת הַיָּדַיִם הַחוּצָה", "הַדֶּלֶת אוֹטוֹמָטִית – הִזָּהֵר" — "Smoking is forbidden," "It is forbidden to talk to the driver," "It is forbidden to put your head and hands outside," "Caution, the door is automatic."

a. אָסוּר לְ־ — *it is forbidden to.* Note also מֻתָּר לְ— *it is permitted to.*

b. לְהוֹצִיא — *to take* or *bring out* from יָצָא *go out*

26\. לֹא כָּל הַנּוֹסְעִים – הִנֵּה לְמָשָׁל הַבָּחוּר הַזֶּה — Not all of the travellers—here for instance, this boy

הִנֵּה לְמָשָׁל — *here for instance* מָשָׁל *an example, a proverb*

27\. לָמָּה הוּא נִדְחָק בְּרֹאשׁ הַתּוֹר? — Why is he pushing himself up to the front of the queue?

לָמָּה הוּא נִדְחָק — *why is he pushing himself?*

נִדְחָק lit. *is pushed*

28\. אַתָּה לֹא רוֹאֶה – הוּא חַיָּל בְּצַהַ״ל — Don't you see — he is a soldier in the army.

חַיָּל בְּצַהַ״ל — *a soldier in Zahal.* צַהַ״ל is the abbreviation for צְבָא הֲגַנָּה לְיִשְׂרָאֵל *The Defence Army for Israel.* It was created by law in 1948. It grew out of the Hagana *Defence*, the voluntary force formed during the British rule of Palestine to defend Jewish life and property.

There is compulsory military service in Israel. The period of national service is at present 3 years for men between the ages of 18–29 and 20 months for women between the ages of 18–26.

29\. עֵינֶיךָ לֹא רוֹאוֹת? אִשָּׁה הָרָה — Are you blind? A pregnant woman.

a. עֵינֶיךָ לֹא רוֹאוֹת? — *Are you blind?* (*Can't your eyes see?*)

b. אִשָּׁה הָרָה — *a pregnant woman*

30\. וְזֶה בַּעַל הַתִּיק הַחוּם? — And this man with the brown bag?

בַּעַל — *owner, possessor, master.* Also *husband*

בַּעַל הַתִּיק *the owner of the bag* (*portfolio*)

בַּעַל הָאִשָּׁה *the husband of the woman*

בַּעַל הַבַּיִת *the master of the house, the landlord*

31\. הוּא חֲבֵר מוֹעֶצֶת הָעִירִיָּה — He is a member of the city council.

חָבֵר — *member* (of an organization, etc), also *friend*

מוֹעֶצֶת הָעִירִיָּה — *the city council.* עִירִיָּה *municipality* from עִיר *city, town.*

32\. רִבּוֹנוֹ שֶׁל עוֹלָם מָתַי יַגִּיעַ תּוֹרוֹ שֶׁל אָדָם פָּשׁוּט? — For God's sake, when will an ordinary man's turn come?

a. רִבּוֹנוֹ שֶׁל עוֹלָם — *for God's sake!* (*Oh Master of the World!*) רִבּוֹן *master* associated with רַב *rabbi*

b. מָתַי יַגִּיעַ תּוֹרוֹ — *when will his turn come?*

c. אָדָם פָּשׁוּט — *an ordinary man* (*a simple man*)

Part three

33\. טַקְסִי! טַקְסִי! — Taxi! Taxi!

טַקְסִי — *taxi*, the Hebrew equivalent is מוֹנִית

34\. קַח אוֹתִי בְּבַקָּשָׁה לִרְחוֹב בְּיָאלִיק מִסְפָּר עֶשְׂרִים וּשְׁמוֹנֶה — Please take me to number twenty-eight Bialik Street.

קַח אוֹתִי — *take me* from לָקַחַת *take.* The principal parts of the imperative are

קְחוּ	*take* (*m. p.*)	קַח	*take* (*m. s.*)
קַחְנָה	*take* (*f. p.*)	קְחִי	*take* (*f. s.*)

35\. בְּסֵדֶר, אֲדוֹנִי, הִכָּנֵס בְּבַקָּשָׁה — Yes, sir. Get in, please.

36\. תּוּכַל לִנְהֹג קְצָת יוֹתֵר מַהֵר בְּבַקָּשָׁה? אֲנִי מְמַהֵר — Could you drive a little faster, please? I'm in a hurry.

לִנְהֹג קְצָת יוֹתֵר מַהֵר — *to drive a little faster*

37. אֲנִי מִצְטַעֵר, אֲדוֹנִי, אֵינֶנִּי יָכוֹל לִנְהֹג יוֹתֵר מַהֵר. יֵשׁ חֻקֵּי תְנוּעָה — I'm sorry, sir. I can't drive any faster. There are traffic regulations.

יֵשׁ חֻקֵּי תְנוּעָה — *there are traffic regulations.*

38. כֵּן, אַתָּה צוֹדֵק — Yes, you are right.

39. בְּסֵדֶר, הִנֵּה הִגַּעְנוּ — O. K., here we are.

40. כַּמָּה עָלַי לְשַׁלֵּם לְךָ? — How much do I owe you?

עָלַי — *it is upon me, I must*

41. אֶפְשָׁר לְקַבֵּל קַבָּלָה עַל הַסְּכוּם? — Is it possible to get a receipt for the amount?

לְקַבֵּל קַבָּלָה — *to obtain a recipt (to receive a receipt)*

שִׁעוּר תְּשְׁעָה־עָשָׂר רַדְיוֹ וְטֶלֶבִיזְיָה

Lesson nineteen Radio and Television

What happens

Part one

Mr. Berman describes a news broadcast on the Israeli Radio.
He gives a summary of the news and quotes the weather forecast. He says that his son Mike likes television in Israel. Susan doesn't watch television; she considers it a waste of time.

Part two

מָה אָמְרוּ בַּחֲדָשׁוֹת? What was said on the news

Hannah missed the news and asks Ruth to tell her what was said. Ruth recapitulates briefly mentioning the activities of the Prime Minister, the parliament and the results of the beauty contest.

קָנִינוּ טֶלֶבִיזְיָה We bought a Television

Moshe tells Yaakov that they bought a television set. Yaakov congratulates him but says that they bought themselves trouble. He says that since they bought their television, their house has been full of friends and neighbours. Moshe says that he likes guests.

Part three

הַטֶּלֶבִיזְיָה הָפְכָה לִהְיוֹת צָרָה The Television became a Nuisance

Mr. Berman finds Mr. Tal watching T.V. and listening to the radio at the same time. Mr. Tal talks about the radio and T.V. programmes which he enjoys.

Notes

Part one

1. אֲנִי אוֹהֵב לְהַאֲזִין לַחֲדָשׁוֹת בְּעִבְרִית קַלָּה — I like listening to the news in simple Hebrew.

a. אֲנִי אוֹהֵב לְהַאֲזִין — *I like listening* לְהַאֲזִין *to listen* from אֹזֶן *ear*

b. חֲדָשׁוֹת — *news* חֲדָשָׁה *news item* חָדָשׁ *new* (*adj.*).

c. עִבְרִית קַלָּה — *simple* (*easy*) *Hebrew*

2. הַקַּרְיָן תָּמִיד פּוֹתֵחַ כָּךְ: עֶרֶב טוֹב, הַשָּׁעָה שֶׁבַע — The announcer always begins like this: "Good evening. It is seven o'clock."

a. קַרְיָן — *announcer, reader* from קָרָא *read*

b. פּוֹתֵחַ — *begins, opens* (the broadcast)

3. וַהֲרֵי הַחֲדָשׁוֹת מִפִּי אַבְרָהָם בֶּן יִצְחָק וְעִקָּרָן תְּחִילָּה — And here is the news from Abraham Ben-Itzhak, and (first) the headlines.

a. וַהֲרֵי הַחֲדָשׁוֹת — *And here is the news.* חֲדָשׁוֹת *news* in Hebrew is plural. הֲרֵי is an Aramaic loan word meaning הִנֵּה *here is, here are.*

b. מִפִּי — *by* (*from the mouth of*)

c. וְעִקָּרָן תְּחִילָּה — *and* (*first*) *the headlines* (*and their essential first*). עִקָּר *principal, essential thing*

4. בְּשִׁדּוּר הַחֲדָשׁוֹת הָאַחֲרוֹן הוֹדִיעַ הַקַּרְיָן שֶׁרֹאשׁ הַמֶּמְשָׁלָה חָזַר הַלַּיְלָה לְיִשְׂרָאֵל מִבִּקּוּר בְּאַרְצוֹת הַבְּרִית — In the last news broadcast the announcer stated that the Prime Minister returned to Israel tonight from a visit to the United States.

a. בְּשִׁדּוּר הַחֲדָשׁוֹת הָאַחֲרוֹן — *in the last news broadcast* שִׁדּוּר *broadcast* (*n.*) שִׁדֵּר *broadcast* (*v.*). Note also תַּחֲנַת הַשִּׁדּוּר *broadcasting station.*

b. הוֹדִיעַ הַקַּרְיָן — *the announcer stated* (*informed*) הוֹדִיעַ *made known, informed* from יָדַע *know.* See Grammar Appendix, Note 34.

5. בְּשִׂיחוֹת רוֹמָא יָדוּנוּ הַשָּׁנָה בַּנּוֹשֵׂא: יִשְׂרָאֵל וְהַמְּדִינוֹת הָעַרְבִיּוֹת — In the Rome talks this year, they will discuss Israel and the Arab States.

a. יָדוּנוּ הַשָּׁנָה בַּנּוֹשֵׂא — *they will discuss the topic this year* — דָּן בְּ *discuss, consider.*

b. הַמְּדִינוֹת הָעַרְבִיּוֹת — *the Arab States*

6. הַכְּנֶסֶת אִשְּׁרָה אֶת תַּקְצִיב הַמְּדִינָה בְּחֶלְקוֹ — The Knesset confirmed the budget in part.

a. כְּנֶסֶת — *parliament, assembly* referring to the Israeli Parliament.

b. אִשְּׁרָה — *it* (*f.*) *approved, confirmed* referring to הַכְּנֶסֶת (f.) *the Parliament.*

c. בְּחֶלְקוֹ — *in part* (*in its part*)

7. אִשְׁתִּי רְגִילָה לְהַאֲזִין לְתַחֲזִית מֶזֶג הָאֲוִיר — My wife is accustomed to listen to the weather forecast.

אִשְׁתִּי רְגִילָה לְהַאֲזִין — *my wife is accustomed to listen* i.e. *likes listening*. You can also say אִשְׁתִּי נוֹהֶגֶת לְהַאֲזִין *my wife is accustomed to listen.*

8. הַקַּרְיָן הִמְשִׁיךְ לְשַׁדֵּר — The announcer continued broadcasting.

9. הַשֵּׁרוּת הַמֶּטֶאוֹרוֹלוֹגִי בְּלוֹד מוֹדִיעַ שֶׁבָּאֲזוֹרֵי הֶהָרִים וּבִפְנִים הָאָרֶץ יִמָּשֵׁךְ הַשָּׁרָב גַּם הַלַּיְלָה וְגַם מָחָר — The meteorological service in Lod states that in the mountainous regions and in the interior of the country, the heat will continue tonight and tomorrow.

בְּלוֹד — *at Lod.* Remember Lod is also the principal airport of Israel.

10. הָרוּחַ תִּהְיֶה דְּרוֹמִית מִזְרָחִית — The wind will be south easterly.

a. הָרוּחַ תִּהְיֶה — *the wind will be.* For the future tense of הָיָה see Grammar Appendix, Note 57.

b. דְּרוֹמִית מִזְרָחִית — *south easterly* (*adj.*). The four points of the compass are:

צָפוֹן *north*

דָּרוֹם *south*
מִזְרָח *east*
מַעֲרָב *west*

11. וְאֵלֶּה הַטֶּמְפֶּרָטוּרוֹת הַלַּיְלָה וּמָחָר — And these are the temperatures for tonight and tomorrow.

12. בִּטְבֶרְיָה מִ־30 עַד 40 מַעֲלוֹת — In Tiberias from 30 to 40 degrees.

a. בִּטְבֶרְיָה — *in Tiberias.* Tiberias is situated on the shores of the Sea of Galilee, 780 feet below sea level, founded by the Romans almost 2,000 years ago. Today it is a charming winter resort spa and is renowned for its therapeutic hot springs.

b. שְׁלֹשִׁים מַעֲלוֹת — *thirty degrees.* Temperatures in Israel are measured on the Centigrade scale.

13. וְזֶהוּ סוֹף הַחֲדָשׁוֹת בְּעִבְרִית קַלָּה — And this is the end of the news in simple Hebrew.

וְזֶהוּ — *and this is, that's it* וְזֶהוּ is the same as וְזֶה הוּא *and this is.*

14. לְכֻלְּכֶם שָׁלוֹם רַב וְעֶרֶב טוֹב מִירוּשָׁלַיִם — Greetings to all of you and good night from Jerusalem.

לְכֻלְּכֶם — *to all of you*

15. הַטֶּלֶבִיזְיָה בְּיִשְׂרָאֵל מָצְאָה חֵן בְּעֵינֵי בְּנִי מַייק — Mike, my son, likes television in Israel.

מָצְאָה חֵן בְּעֵינֵי מַייק — *Mike liked it (f.)* i.e. *the television.* For this expression see Lesson 2, note 32a.

16. סוּזַן אֵינָהּ רוֹצָה לְהִסְתַּכֵּל בַּטֶּלֶבִיזְיָה — Susan doesn't want to watch television.

17. הִיא טוֹעֶנֶת שֶׁטֶּלֶבִיזְיָה יֵשׁ לָהּ בְּאָמֶרִיקָה — She contends that she has television in America.

הִיא טוֹעֶנֶת — *she argues, she contends*

18. וְחֲבָל עַל הַזְּמַן — And it's a shame to waste the time.

Part two

19. מָה אָמְרוּ בַּחֲדָשׁוֹת — What did they say in the news.

20. הָעֶרֶב לֹא הִסְפַּקְתִּי לִשְׁמוֹעַ אֶת הַחֲדָשׁוֹת בָּרַדְיוֹ — This evening, I did not manage to hear the news on the radio.

לֹא הִסְפַּקְתִּי לִשְׁמוֹעַ — *I did not manage to hear*

21. רֹאשׁ הַמֶּמְשָׁלָה חָזַר הַלַּיְלָה לְיִשְׂרָאֵל מִבִּקּוּר בְּאַרְצוֹת הַבְּרִית — The Prime Minister returned to Israel tonight from a visit to the United States.

רֹאשׁ הַמֶּמְשָׁלָה — *the Prime Minister (the head of the government)*

22. כְּבָר חָזַר? הוּא הִקְדִּים לַחֲזוֹר, נָכוֹן? — He's returned already? He returned early didn't he?

a. הוּא הִקְדִּים לַחֲזוֹר — *he returned early (he was early to return).* See Lesson 14, note 16a.

b. נָכוֹן? — *right? Isn't it so?* It is equivalent to the French *n'est-ce pas?*

23. כֵּן, הוּא הִקְדִּים בְּיוֹמַיִם — Yes, he is two days early.

בְּיוֹמַיִם — *by two days.* For the use of the DUAL form, see Lesson 4, note 7c.

24. כְּמוֹ כֵן הוֹדִיעוּ שֶׁהַכְּנֶסֶת אִשְּׁרָה אֶת תַּקְצִיב הַמְּדִינָה — Likewise, they announced that the Parliament confirmed the State budget.

a. כְּמוֹ כֵן — *likewise*

b. הוֹדִיעוּ — *they announced* i.e. *it was announced.*

25. אֲנִי מְקַוֶּה שֶׁהַמִּסִּים לֹא יַעֲלוּ שׁוּב — I hope that the taxes won't go up again.

לֹא יַעֲלוּ שׁוּב — *will not go up again*

26. נְקַוֶּה — Let's hope (not).

27. וּמִי נִצְּחָה בְּתַחֲרוּת מַלְכַּת הַיֹּפִי? — And who won the beauty queen contest?

a. נִצְּחָה — *she won, she conquered*

b. תַּחֲרוּת — *contest, competition*

c. מַלְכַּת הַיֹּפִי — *the beauty queen,* equivalent to the idea of "Miss World"

28. בַּחוּרָה יְרוּשַׁלְמִית יְפֵהפִיָּה — A very beautiful girl from Jerusalem.

יְפֵהפִיָּה — *very beautiful* יָפָה *beautiful (f.)*

29. הַיּוֹם אַחַר הַצָּהֳרַיִם תִּתְקַיֵּם בְּתֵל־אָבִיב תַּחֲרוּת כַּדּוּר־רֶגֶל בֵּין קְבוּצַת מַכַּבִּי וּקְבוּצַת הַפּוֹעֵל — This afternoon, in Tel-Aviv, there will be a soccer match between the Maccabi team and the Hapoel (worker) team.

a. קְבוּצָה — *team, group*

b. מַכַּבִּי... הַפּוֹעֵל — *Maccabi. . .Hapoel.* Two major sports organizations in Israel. Hapoel (*The Worker*) is affiliated to the Histadrut or the Israel Labour Federation. Maccabi is independent. All sports in Israel are amateur.

30. לֹא כְּדַאי — No, it's not worth it.

31. יְשַׁדְּרוּ אֶת הַמִּשְׂחָק בַּטֶּלֶבִיזְיָה — The game will be televised.

32. בְּשָׁעָה טוֹבָה — Congratulations.

בְּשָׁעָה טוֹבָה — *Congratulations.* This greeting is said when one buys a new commodity. You can also say מַזָּל טוֹב *good luck.*

33. דֶּרֶךְ אַגַּב, קְנִיתֶם לְעַצְמְכֶם צָרָה רְצִינִית מְאֹד — By the way, you bought yourselves a real problem.

a. דֶּרֶךְ אַגַּב — *by the way*

b. קְנִיתֶם לְעַצְמְכֶם — *you bought (for) yourselves*

c. צָרָה רְצִינִית — *a serious trouble, a real problem*

34. מֵהַיּוֹם שֶׁקָּנִינוּ טֶלֶבִיזְיָה הַבַּיִת מָלֵא חֲבֵרִים וּשְׁכֵנִים עַד אֶפֶס מָקוֹם — From the day we bought a television, the house has been completely full of friends and neighbours.

a. מֵהַיּוֹם שֶׁקָּנִינוּ — *from the day we bought*

b. מָלֵא... עַד אֶפֶס מָקוֹם — *completely full.* An idiomatic expression equivalent to the English *packed out.*

35. מִשֶּׁבַע בָּעֶרֶב עַד חֲצוֹת אֵין רֶגַע מְנוּחָה — From seven in the evening until midnight, there isn't a moment's rest (moment of rest).

a. עַד חֲצוֹת — *until midnight* חֲצִי *half*

b. אֵין רֶגַע מְנוּחָה — *there is not a moment's rest (moment of rest)*

36. אֲנִי אוֹהֵב אוֹרְחִים. לֹא אִכְפַּת לִי — I like guests. I don't care.

לֹא אִכְפַּת לִי — *I don't care.*

Part three

37. הַטֶּלֶבִיזְיָה הָפְכָה לִהְיוֹת צָרָה — The television has become troublesome.

a. הָפְכָה לִהְיוֹת — *has become (has turned to be)*

b. צָרָה — *trouble (n.)*

38.	שוב אתם יושבים ליד המקלט וצופים בסרט הרפתקאות	You are sitting next to the set again watching "The Adventurers" film.
	צופים	*they watch.* צופה can also mean a *scout.*
39.	המצחיק הוא שגם הטרנזיסטור פתוח	The funny thing is that the transistor radio is on too.
	טרנזיסטור	*transistor radio*
40.	מה קורה פה? מאזינים לרדיו וצופים בתכנית הטלביזיה בעת ובעונה אחת?	What's happening here? Listening to the radio and watching a television programme at the same time?
	בעת ובעונה אחת	*all at the same time, simultaneously (at one time and season)*
41.	איזו תכנית אתם רואים בטלביזיה	Which programme do you watch on television?
42.	אנחנו אוהבים לראות "שלחן עגל" "ומשימה בלתי אפשרית"	We like to see "Round Table" and "Mission Impossible."
a.	שלחן עגל	*round table*
b.	משימה בלתי אפשרית	*mission impossible.* Note the negative word בלתי, same as English *un-*, *not.*
43.	"טובים השנים מן האחד" וחדשות	"Two are Better Than One" and the news
	טובים השנים מן האחד	*two are better than one*
44.	לאיזה תכניות ברדיו אתם מאזינים?	Which radio programmes do you listen to?
45.	קונצרטים ומוסיקה קלה לשעת הצהרים	Concerts and light music in (for) the afternoon
	מוסיקה קלה	*light music*

שעור עשרים — בקור בתיאטרון

Lesson twenty — **A visit to the Theatre**

What happens

Part one

Mr. Berman tells of a visit to the theatre with the Tal family. After the performance they went to a café and discussed the play. Mr. Berman did not enjoy the play, he prefers serious plays to musicals.

Part two

קולנוע Cinema

Ruth and Yaakov decide to go to the cinema and have a long discussion whether to go to the first or second performance. Danny, who is not going, declares that he can go to bed by himself and does not need any help.

קונצרט A Concert

Hannah tells Ruth that they are going to a concert this evening. Ruth decides to surprise Yaakov with tickets to the same concert.

Part three

ההצגה The Play

Hannah enjoyed the play but Ruth didn't like the first act. She criticized the dancers and the woman who played the nurse.

Notes

Part one

1.	אמש אכלנו ארוחת ערב אצל גיסי	Last night we ate dinner at my brother-in-law's.

2.	לְאַחַר אֲרוּחַת הָעֶרֶב הָלַכְנוּ לִרְאוֹת הַצָּגָה	After dinner we went to see a show.
	הַצָּגָה	*a performance, show.* It could be a film or a theatre performance.
3.	הִגַּעְנוּ לַתֵּאַטְרוֹן עֶשֶׂר דַּקּוֹת לִפְנֵי הַתְחָלַת הַהַצָּגָה	We got to the theatre ten minutes before the beginning of the show.
	הַתְחָלַת הַהַצָּגָה	*the beginning of the show*
4.	בַּפֶּתַח עָמַד סַדְּרָן וּבָדַק אֶת כַּרְטִיסֵי הַכְּנִיסָה	The attendant stood at the entrance and checked the entrance tickets.
a.	בַּפֶּתַח	*at the entrance.* The word פֶּתַח *entrance* is from פָּתַח *open.*
b.	סַדְּרָן	*attendant.* The word is derived from סֵדֶר *order* i.e. *one who keeps order.*
c.	כַּרְטִיסֵי כְּנִיסָה	*entrance tickets.*
5.	נִכְנַסְנוּ לַתֵּאַטְרוֹן וְשַׂמְנוּ אֶת הַבְּגָדִים בַּמֶּלְתָּחָה	We entered the theatre and put our coats in the cloakroom.
	בַּמֶּלְתָּחָה	*in the cloakroom*
6.	יָשַׁבְנוּ בַּיָּצִיעַ	We sat on the balcony.
	בַּיָּצִיעַ	*on the balcony.*
7.	הַכִּסְאוֹת הָיוּ מְרֻפָּדִים וְנוֹחִים	The chairs were upholstered and comfortable.
8.	רֹב הַמְּקוֹמוֹת הָיוּ תְּפוּסִים	Most of the seats were occupied.
9.	אֶפְשָׁר לוֹמַר שֶׁהָאוּלָם הָיָה מָלֵא מִפֶּה אֶל פֶּה	One can say that the auditorium was full from one corner to the other.
a.	אֶפְשָׁר לוֹמַר	*one can say* (*it is possible to say*)

b.	מִפֶּה אֶל פֶּה	*from one corner to the other* i.e. *completely full.* See the expression in Lesson 19, note 34b עַד אֶפֶס מָקוֹם.
10.	בְּשָׁעָה שְׁמוֹנֶה וּשְׁלֹשִׁים בְּדִיּוּק עָלָה הַמָּסָךְ וְהַהַצָּגָה הִתְחִילָה	At exactly 8.30 the curtain rose and the show began.
a.	עָלָה הַמָּסָךְ	*the curtain rose*
b.	הִתְחִילָה	*it* (*f.*) *began.* You can also say הֵחֵלָּה.
11.	תָּא הַתִּזְמֹרֶת הָיָה לִפְנֵי הַבִּימָה	The orchestra pit was in front of the stage.
a.	תָּא הַתִּזְמֹרֶת	*the orchestra pit.* תָּא *pit, cell*
b.	הַבִּימָה	*the stage*
12.	הַתַּפְאוּרָה הָיְתָה יָפָה מְאֹד	The set was very fine.
	תַּפְאוּרָה	*set, decoration* (theatre)
13.	בֵּין הַמַּעֲרָכָה הַשְּׁנִיָּה וְהַשְּׁלִישִׁית הָיְתָה הַפְסָקָה	There was an interval between the second and third acts.
a.	מַעֲרָכָה	*act* (play)
b.	הַפְסָקָה	*intermission, recess, interval*
14.	אַחֲרֵי הַהַצָּגָה הָלַכְנוּ לִשְׁתּוֹת קָפֶה בְּבֵית קָפֶה וְשׂוֹחַחְנוּ עַל הַמַּחֲזֶה	After the show, we went to drink coffee at a coffee house and we discussed the play.
	שׂוֹחַחְנוּ עַל הַמַּחֲזֶה	*we discussed the play*
15.	אִשְׁתִּי וְגִיסִי נֶהֱנוּ מְאֹד מֵהַמַּחֲזֶה	My wife and my brother-in-law enjoyed the play very much.

נֶהֱנוּ מְאֹד מֵהַמַּחֲזֶה — *they enjoyed the play very much.* In Hebrew *enjoy from.* Note these forms of *enjoy:*

נֶהֱנֵיתִי	*I enjoyed*
נֶהֱנֵית	*you (f) enjoyed*
נֶהֱנָה	*he enjoyed*
נֶהֶנְתָה	*she enjoyed*
נֶהֱנֵינוּ	*we enjoyed*

16. שָׁרוֹן נֶהֶנְתָה מֵהָרִקּוּדִים אַךְ לֹא מֵהַשִּׁירִים — Sharon enjoyed the dancing but not the singing.

רִקּוּדִים — *dances, dancing* (*n.*) רָקַד *dance* (*v.*)

17. אֲנִי מַעֲדִיף הַצָּגָה רְצִינִית עַל מַחֲזֶמֶר — I prefer a serious play to a musical.

a. אֲנִי מַעֲדִיף... עַל — *I prefer. . .to (over)*

b. מַחֲזֶמֶר — *musical play.* The word is composed of מַחֲזֶה *play* and זֶמֶר *singing, song.*

Part two

18. יַעֲקֹב, אוּלַי תַּזְמִין אוֹתִי פַּעַם לְסֶרֶט? יֵשׁ סֶרֶט טוֹב בְּקוֹלְנוֹעַ "אַלֶנְבִּי" — Yaakov, won't you invite me to a film sometime? There's a good film at the Allenby Theatre.

אוּלַי תַּזְמִין אוֹתִי? — *Won't you invite me?*

19. אֵיזוֹ בַּקָּשָׁה אַחֲרֵי חֲמֵשׁ־עֶשְׂרֵה שְׁנוֹת נִשּׂוּאִים! — What a request after fifteen years of marriage!

a. אֵיזוֹ בַּקָּשָׁה! — *what a request*! meaning *of course I'll invite you.*

b. שְׁנוֹת נִשּׂוּאִים — *years of marriage*

20. אֲנִי צָרִיךְ לְהַזְמִין אוֹתָךְ? — Do I need to invite you?

21. לְאֵיזוֹ הַצָּגָה? רִאשׁוֹנָה אוֹ שְׁנִיָּה? — To which performance? The first or the second?

לְאֵיזוֹ הַצָּגָה? — *to which performance*? Almost all cinemas in Israel have two evening performances, usually at 7.00 and 9.00.

22. לָמָּה לְהַצָּגָה הַשְּׁנִיָּה? מָחָר בַּבֹּקֶר צָרִיךְ לָקוּם מֻקְדָּם — Why the second show? Tomorrow morning, you need to get up early.

23. הַסִּבָּה פְּשׁוּטָה — The reason is simple.

24. וְעַד אָז נַסְפִּיק לֶאֱכֹל וּלְהַשְׁכִּיב אֶת הַיְלָדִים לִישׁוֹן — And until then, we'll manage to eat and to put the children to bed.

a. וְעַד אָז — *and until then*

b. לְהַשְׁכִּיב לִישׁוֹן — *to put to bed.*

25. מָה? מִמָּתַי צָרִיךְ לְהַשְׁכִּיב אוֹתִי לִישׁוֹן? — What? Since when has it been necessary to put me to bed?

26. אֲנִי יָכוֹל לָלֶכֶת לִישׁוֹן בְּעַצְמִי — I can go to bed by myself.

27. אוֹתִי בְּוַדַּאי לֹא צָרִיךְ לְהַשְׁכִּיב — Certainly it's not necessary to put me to bed.

28. נֵלֵךְ מֻקְדָּם. אֲנִי רוֹצָה לִרְאוֹת אֶת הַיּוֹמָן — Let's go early. I want to see the newsreel.

יוֹמָן — *newsreel* and also *diary* from יוֹם *day.*

29 הַאִם יֵשׁ לָכֶם כְּבָר כַּרְטִיסִים? — Have you got tickets already?

30. לְיַעֲקֹב יֵשׁ הַיּוֹם יוֹם הֻלֶּדֶת וַאֲנִי רוֹצָה לְהָכִין לוֹ הַפְתָּעָה — Today is Yaakov's birthday and I want to surprise him (prepare a surprise for him).

31.	לָנוּ אֵין, אַךְ אֲנִי חוֹשֶׁבֶת שֶׁיֵּשׁ עוֹד הַרְבֵּה כַּרְטִיסִים בַּקֻּפָּה	We haven't, but I think there are still many tickets at the box office.
	לָנוּ אֵין	*we haven't got (any)*

Part three

32.	הַאִם נֶהֱנֵית מֵהַהַצָּגָה, חַנָּה?	Did you enjoy the show, Hannah?
33.	כֵּן, נֶהֱנֵינוּ מְאֹד. אֲנִי אוֹהֶבֶת מְאֹד מַחֲזוֹת מוּסִיקָלִיִּים	Yes, we really enjoyed ourselves. I like musical plays very much.
34.	גַּם אֲנִי מַעֲדִיפָה מַחֲזֶמֶר עַל הַצָּגָה רְצִינִית	I, too, prefer a musical to a serious play.
35.	הַאִם הַמַּעֲרָכָה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה מָצְאָה חֵן בְּעֵינַיִךְ?	Did you like the first act?
	הַמַּעֲרָכָה הָרִאשׁוֹנָה	*the first act*
36.	לֹא, בִּכְלָל לֹא. הָאִשָּׁה רָקְדָה רַע מְאֹד וְהָרַקְדָן הָיָה עַצְבָּנִי	No, not at all. The woman danced very poorly. And the dancer was nervous.
a.	לֹא, בִּכְלָל לֹא	*no, not at all*
b.	רַקְדָן	*dancer* רָקַד *dance (v.)* רִקּוּדִים *dancing (n.) dances (n.)*
37.	הָאִשָּׁה שֶׁשִּׂחֲקָה בְּתַפְקִיד הָאָחוֹת דִּבְּרָה יוֹתֵר מִדַּי מַהֵר וְלֹא רָקְדָה יָפֶה	The woman, who played the role of the nurse, spoke too quickly and didn't dance well.

a.	הָאִשָּׁה שֶׁשִּׂחֲקָה בְּתַפְקִיד הָאָחוֹת	*the woman who played the role of the sister* אָחוֹת *nurse*, also *sister, nun*.
b.	יוֹתֵר מִדַּי מַהֵר	*too quickly*
38.	יֵשׁ לִי רֹשֶׁם שֶׁלֹּא נֶהֱנֵיתֶם מֵהַהַצָּגָה	I have the impression that you didn't enjoy the show.
	יֵשׁ לִי רֹשֶׁם	*I have the impression*
39.	כַּמּוּבָן שֶׁנֶּהֱנֵינוּ	Of course we enjoyed ourselves.

Lesson twenty one In the family

What happens

Part one

David Berman talks about his brother's family. His brother Moshe is an accountant. He lives with his family in Tel-Aviv in a large apartment. His wife, Nurit, is a housewife. His elder son, Gil, studied radio electronics in a vocational school and is now serving in the army. Sarah is the younger daughter. She is still at secondary school.

Part two

אִלּוּ הָיִיתִי עָשִׁיר If I were rich . . .

Susan asks Gil what he would do if he were rich. Gil says that he would travel abroad, buy a big car and go to the beach to have a good time. Susan says that if he were a rich man he would be very unhappy because he wouldn't know how to spend his money.

גִּיסָתִי נוּרִית Nurit, my sister-in-law

Nurit says that she is very tired having spent the entire day doing housework. She tells Moshe what she had to do.

Part three

דִּירָה לְהַשְׂכִּיר A flat to rent

Moshe inquires about renting a furnished flat. Mrs. Katz shows him the apartment and points out how quiet it is. Moshe asks about the rent then says the flat is suitable for them.

Notes

Part one

1. אָחִי מֹשֶׁה בָּא לְיִשְׂרָאֵל לִפְנֵי עֶשֶׂר שָׁנִים — My brother, Moshe, came to Israel ten years ago.
   לִפְנֵי עֶשֶׂר שָׁנִים — *ten years ago (before ten years)*
   לִפְנֵי שָׁבוּעַ — *a week ago*
   לִפְנֵי שָׁנָה — *a year ago*

2. הוּא בָּא לְיִשְׂרָאֵל מֵהוּנְגַרְיָה — He came to Israel from Hungary.
   מֵהוּנְגַרְיָה — *from Hungary*

3. הוּא לָמַד בָּאוּנִיבֶרְסִיטָה רְאִיַּת חֶשְׁבּוֹנוֹת — He studied book keeping at the University.
   רְאִיַּת חֶשְׁבּוֹנוֹת — *book keeping*

4. מִשְׂרָדוֹ שֶׁל אָחִי רָחוֹק מִן הַבַּיִת — My brother's office is far from home.
   מִשְׂרָדוֹ שֶׁל אָחִי — *my brother's office (his office of my brother)*. You can also say הַמִּשְׂרָד שֶׁל אָחִי or מִשְׂרַד אָחִי.

5. הוּא נוֹסֵעַ לְשָׁם בְּאוֹטוֹבּוּס — He goes there by bus.

6. דִּירָתוֹ נִמְצֵאת בְּמֶרְכַּז תֵּל־אָבִיב — His flat is in the centre of Tel-Aviv.
   דִּירָתוֹ נִמְצֵאת — *his flat is located (is found)*

7. זוֹהִי דִּירָה גְּדוֹלָה וְנוֹחָה בַּקּוֹמָה הַשְּׁנִיָּה שֶׁל בַּיִת חָדָשׁ — It's a large, comfortable flat on the second floor of a new building.

8. בְּדִירָתוֹ שְׁלֹשָׁה חֲדָרִים, מִסְדְּרוֹן, מִטְבָּח וְשֵׁרוּתִים — In his flat there are three rooms; a hall, a kitchen and a bathroom.
   a. מִסְדְּרוֹן — *hall, corridor*
   b. שֵׁרוּתִים — *conveniences* (i.e. *bathrooms, toilets*) (Lit. *services*)

9.	נוּרִית הִיא אֵשֶׁת אָחִי	Nurit is my brother's wife.
	אֵשֶׁת אָחִי	*my brother's wife* אֵשֶׁת *the wife of*
10.	הִיא עֲקֶרֶת בַּיִת	She is a housewife.
11.	גִּיל הוּא הַבֵּן הַבְּכוֹר	Gil is the elder son.
	הַבֵּן הַבְּכוֹר	*the first born son, the eldest*
12.	הוּא לָמַד חַשְׁמַל וְרַדְיוֹ בְּבֵית סֵפֶר תִּיכוֹן מִקְצוֹעִי	He studied electricity and radio at a vocational secondary school.
a.	בֵּית סֵפֶר תִּיכוֹן	*secondary school*
b.	מִקְצוֹעִי	*professional, vocational*
13.	עַכְשָׁו גִּיל בָּחוּר גָּדוֹל וּמְשָׁרֵת בַּצָּבָא	Now Gil is grown up and is serving in the army.
	מְשָׁרֵת בַּצָּבָא	*he is serving in the army*
14.	הוּא חַיָּל בְּחֵיל הַקֶּשֶׁר	He is a soldier in the signal corps.
	חֵיל הַקֶּשֶׁר	*signal corps* קֶשֶׁר *communications*
15.	גִּיל חוֹזֵר הַבַּיְתָה מֵהַצָּבָא בְּשַׁבָּתוֹת	Gil comes home from the army for the Sabbath.
16.	שָׂרָה הִיא הַבַּת הַצְּעִירָה	Sarah is the younger daughter.
17.	הִיא לוֹמֶדֶת בְּבֵית סֵפֶר תִּיכוֹן	She goes to secondary school.
18.	שָׂרָה מִתְכּוֹנֶנֶת לִבְחִינוֹת בַּגְרוּת	Sarah is preparing herself for matriculation examinations.
a.	בְּחִינוֹת בַּגְרוּת	*matriculation examinations.* In Israel, all secondary school students must take the matriculation examination. If they pass it qualifies them to enter a university.
b.	בַּגְרוּת	*maturity*

Part two

19.	מָה הָיִיתָ עוֹשֶׂה אִלּוּ הָיִיתָ עָשִׁיר?	What would you do if you were a rich man?

	אִלּוּ הָיִיתָ	*if you were.* לוּ is often used for אִלּוּ Note the pattern of the Hebrew. Sentences of condition: אִלּוּ הָיִיתִי עָשִׁיר הָיִיתִי קוֹנֶה.... *If I were a rich man I would buy...* לוּ יָדַעְתִּי זֹאת הָיִיתִי הוֹלֵךְ לְשָׁם *If I knew that I would go there.*
20.	הָיִיתִי נוֹסֵעַ לְחוּץ לָאָרֶץ	I would travel abroad.
	הָיִיתִי נוֹסֵעַ	*I would travel*
21.	הָיִיתִי נוֹסֵעַ לְצָרְפַת לִרְאוֹת אֶת פָּרִיס	I would travel to France to see Paris.
	פָּרִיס	*Paris.*
22.	לְאַרְצוֹת הַבְּרִית לִרְאוֹת אֶת גּוֹרְדֵי הַשְּׁחָקִים	To the United States to see the skyscrapers.
	גּוֹרְדֵי הַשְּׁחָקִים	*skyscrapers* (*the scrapers of the skies*) גֵּרֵד *scrape, scratch* (*v.*)
23.	וּלְאַפְרִיקָה לִרְאוֹת מַה קּוֹרֶה שָׁם	And to Africa to see what's happening there.
24.	הַאִם זֶה הַכֹּל	Is that all?
25.	לֹא, הָיִיתִי קוֹנֶה מְכוֹנִית גְּדוֹלָה וְנוֹסֵעַ לְחוֹף הַיָּם לַעֲשׂוֹת חַיִּים	No, I would buy a big car and drive to the coast to live it up.
a.	מְכוֹנִית גְּדוֹלָה	*a big car*
b.	לַעֲשׂוֹת חַיִּים	*to live it up* (*to make life, to spend life*)
26.	אֲנִי מְקַוֶּה שֶׁלְּעוֹלָם לֹא תִּהְיֶה עָשִׁיר	I hope that you will never be rich!
	לְעוֹלָם לֹא תִּהְיֶה	*You will never be.* Note לְעוֹלָם followed by the negative לֹא —never. לְעוֹלָם לֹא אֶרְאֶה אוֹתוֹ שׁוּב *I shall never see him again.*

27.	מִפְּנֵי שֶׁתִּהְיֶה אֻמְלָל. לֹא תֵּדַע אֵיךְ לְהוֹצִיא אֶת כַּסְפְּךָ	Because you will be miserable. You won't know how to spend your money.
	לְהוֹצִיא אֶת כַּסְפְּךָ	*to spend your money* (*to take out your money*).
28.	בִּשַּׁלְתִּי דָּגִים לִכְבוֹד שַׁבָּת. גִּיל יָבוֹא לְשַׁבָּת הַבַּיְתָה. הוּא אוֹהֵב מְאֹד דָּגִים	I baked fish in honour of the Sabbath. Gil will come home for the Sabbath. He really likes fish.
29.	עֲדַיִן אֵין זוֹ סִבָּה לִהְיוֹת עֲיֵפָה	This still isn't a reason to be tired.
30.	אֲנִי גַּם נִקִּיתִי אֶת הַבַּיִת, כִּבַּסְתִּי וְגִהַצְתִּי	I also cleaned the house, did the laundry and ironed.
31.	הַבַּיִת הָיָה מְלֻכְלָךְ מְאֹד	The house was very dirty.
32.	בַּפַּעַם הַבָּאָה הִיא בְּעַצְמָהּ צְרִיכָה לְסַדֵּר אֶת הַחֶדֶר שֶׁלָּהּ	Next time, she has to clean her room herself.
a.	בַּפַּעַם הַבָּאָה	*next time* (*in the time that comes*)
b.	בְּעַצְמָהּ	*herself.* See Grammar Appendix, Notes 20, 25.
33.	כָּרֶגַע הִיא עֲסוּקָה	At the moment, she is busy.

Part three

34.	דִּירָה לְהַשְׂכִּיר	A flat to rent
35.	בֹּקֶר טוֹב גְּבֶרֶת, יֵשׁ לָךְ דִּירָה מְרֹהֶטֶת לְהַשְׂכִּיר?	Good morning, madam. Have you got a furnished flat to rent?
	דִּירָה מְרֹהֶטֶת	*a furnished flat*
36.	לָמָּה לֹא, אֲדוֹנִי. בְּכִוּוּן זֶה	Why not, sir? This way.

a.	לָמָּה לֹא	*why not*? This is one way of saying *you are most welcome to do so.*
b.	בְּכִוּוּן זֶה	*this way*! (*in this direction*)
37.	הַדֶּלֶת הָרִאשׁוֹנָה בְּצַד יָמִין בִּקְצֵה הַמַּדְרֵגוֹת	The first door on the right at the end of the stairs.
38.	שֶׁקֶט מְאֹד פֹּה, אֵין אַף פַּעַם רַעַשׁ בְּחֵלֶק זֶה שֶׁל הָעִיר	It's very peaceful here. There is never any noise in this part of the city.
	שֶׁקֶט מְאֹד פֹּה	*It is very peaceful here.*
39.	זֶה נִפְלָא כִּי אֲנִי צָרִיךְ לַעֲבֹד בָּעֲרָבִים	That's wonderful, because I need to work in the evenings.
40.	הִנֵּה כָּאן הָאַמְבַּטְיָה. יֵשׁ מַיִם חַמִּים בְּמֶשֶׁךְ כָּל הַיּוֹם	Here is the bathroom. There's hot water all day.
41.	מַהוּ שְׂכַר הַדִּירָה בְּבַקָּשָׁה?	What's the rent for the flat, please?
42.	אֲנִי חוֹשֵׁב שֶׁדִּירָה זוֹ מַתְאִימָה לָנוּ	I think that this flat is suitable for us.
	מַתְאִימָה לָנוּ	*it is suitable for us.*

Lesson twenty two Tel-Aviv

What happens

Part one

Mike Berman tells of a walk in Tel-Aviv. He likes the city with its wide clean streets. He talks about the various places they visited and the heavy traffic. He says that Sarah told him something of the history of Tel-Aviv and then they went to Ramat Gan.

Part two

טִיּוּל בְּתֵל־אָבִיב A walk in Tel-Aviv

Sarah and Mike take a walk in Tel-Aviv. Mike admires the park, the theatre, the concert hall and the museum. Mike wants to pick some flowers but Sarah warns him that he would have to pay a fine.

בִּקּוּר בְּבֵית הַכְּנֶסֶת A visit to a Synagogue

Mike and Susan visit a historic synagogue. The warden shows them around the synagogue and tells them about its history.

Part three

נוֹלַדְתִּי בְּתֵל־אָבִיב I was born in Tel-Aviv

Miriam tells Susan that she was born in Tel-Aviv as were her mother and grandmother. She says she loves Tel-Aviv. It is the largest city in Israel. Susan says that she has attended a concert in Tel-Aviv and visited a nightclub in Jaffa.

Notes

Part one

1. אֶתְמוֹל טִיַּלְנוּ בָּרֶגֶל בִּרְחוֹבוֹת הָעִיר — We took a walk yesterday through the city streets.

טִיַּלְנוּ בָּרֶגֶל — *we took an excursion by foot.*

2. תֵּל־אָבִיב עִיר גְּדוֹלָה — Tel-Aviv is a big city.

3. הַרְבֵּה רְחוֹבוֹת בָּעִיר. הָרְחוֹבוֹת גְּדוֹלִים וּנְקִיִּים — There are many streets in the city. The streets are wide and clean.

הָרְחוֹבוֹת גְּדוֹלִים וּנְקִיִּים — *the streets are wide and clean.* Note that although the plural is רְחוֹבוֹת the adjective גְּדוֹלִים is masculine since רְחוֹב *street* is masculine.

4. רְחוֹב אֶלֶנְבִּי הוּא רְחוֹב יָפֶה — Allenby Street is a nice street.

5. בּוֹ נִמְצָאִים בָּתֵּי־קוֹלְנוֹעַ, בָּתֵּי־קָפֶה וּבָתֵּי־מִסְחָר — You can find cinemas, coffee houses and commercial establishments there.

6. בִּקַּרְנוּ בְּמוּזֵיאוֹן תֵּל־אָבִיב בִּשְׂדֵרוֹת רוֹטְשִׁילְד, בַּנָּמֵל, בְּבֵית הָעִירִיָּה — We visited the Tel-Aviv Museum in Rothschild Boulevard, the port, the city hall,

a. מוּזֵיאוֹן תֵּל־אָבִיב — *Tel-Aviv Museum.* Tel-Aviv has several good museums. The most popular are the Helena Rubinstein Pavilion for modern art, and the Haeretz Museum complex.

b. שְׂדֵרוֹת רוֹטְשִׁילְד — *Rothschild Boulevard,* one of the best known in Tel-Aviv.

7. בְּהֵיכַל הַתַּרְבּוּת, בְּהַבִּימָה, וּבְבֵית הֵלֶנָה רוּבִּינְשְׁטֵין — the Mann Auditorium, the Habimah Theatre and the Helena Rubinstein Pavilion.

a. הֵיכַל הַתַּרְבּוּת — *Cultural Centre (Shrine of Culture).* It is known in English as the Mann Auditorium.

Here the famous Israel Philharmonic Orchestra performs.

b. הַבִּימָה — *Habimah Theatre.* The best, oldest and most famous Hebrew Theatre in Israel. It was founded in Russia in 1918 and moved to Palestine in 1928.

8. הַתְּנוּעָה בְּתֵל־אָבִיב גְּדוֹלָה יוֹתֵר מֵאֲשֶׁר בִּירוּשָׁלַיִם — The traffic in Tel-Aviv is greater than in Jerusalem.

9. שָׂרָה סִפְּרָה לָנוּ שֶׁתֵּל־אָבִיב נוֹסְדָה בִּשְׁנַת 1909 — Sarah told us that Tel-Aviv was founded in 1909.

נוֹסְדָה — *it (f.) was established.* You will note that Tel-Aviv is feminine. This is one of the peculiarities of the Hebrew language. All names of cities and countries are feminine.

10. לִפְנֵי שֶׁנּוֹסְדָה תֵּל־אָבִיב הָיוּ שָׁם רַק חוֹלוֹת — Before Tel-Aviv was founded there was only sand there.

חוֹלוֹת — *sands* חוֹל (m.) *sand*

11. בָּאוּ חֲלוּצִים מֵרוּסְיָה, מִפּוֹלִין, מִגֶּרְמַנְיָה וּמִתֵּימָן — Pioneers came from Russia, Poland, Germany and The Yemen.

חָלוּץ — *Halutz, pioneer.* A title used in reference to the early Zionist settlers in Palestine since the beginning of this century. Note the names of some countries רוּסְיָה *Russia* פּוֹלִין *Poland* גֶּרְמַנְיָה *Germany* and תֵּימָן *The Yemen.*

12. סָלְלוּ כְּבִישִׁים, בָּנוּ בָּתִּים וְנָטְעוּ גַּנִּים — They paved roads, built houses and planted gardens.

13. בָּרִאשׁוֹנָה, תֵּל־אָבִיב הָיְתָה שְׁכוּנָה קְטַנָּה — In the beginning Tel-Aviv was a small community.

בָּרִאשׁוֹנָה — *in the beginning.*

14. אַחַת מִשְּׁכוּנוֹת הָעִיר יָפוֹ — One of the neighbourhoods of the city is Jaffa.

יָפוֹ — *Jaffa.* It is one of the world's oldest cities and seaports from which Jonah sailed. Tel-Aviv, in fact, was founded in 1909 originally as a suburb of Jaffa.

15. שָׂמַחְתִּי לִלְמֹד עַל עֲבָרָהּ שֶׁל הָעִיר — I was happy to learn about the city's past.

עֲבָרָהּ שֶׁל הָעִיר — *the city's past (history)*

16. נָסַעְנוּ לְרָמַת־גָּן, בִּקַּרְנוּ בְּבָתֵּי הַחֲרֹשֶׁת וּבַגַּנִּים — We travelled to Ramat Gan and visited the factories and the parks.

a. רָמַת־גָּן — *Ramat Gan (Garden Hill).* It is just to the east of Tel-Aviv. It is famous for its industry, parks, and planned streets.

b. בָּתֵּי חֲרֹשֶׁת — *factories.* Another word used with בֵּית

Part two

17. בֹּא נְטַיֵּל בְּגַן־יַעֲקֹב. מַה דַּעְתְּךָ עַל הַחֵלֶק הַזֶּה שֶׁל תֵּל־אָבִיב? — Come, let's visit Jacob's Park. What do you think of this part of Tel-Aviv?

a. גַּן יַעֲקֹב — *Jacob's Park*, adjoining the Mann Auditorium.

b. מַה דַּעְתְּךָ — *What do you think? (What's your view?)*

18. אֲנִי מֻפְתָּע לִמְצֹא גַּן נֶחְמָד כָּזֶה בְּלֵב תֵּל־אָבִיב — I'm surprised to find such a nice park in the heart of Tel-Aviv.

a.	אֲנִי מֻפְתָּע לִמְצֹא	*I am surprised to find* הַפְתָּעָה *surprise (n.)*
b.	גַּן נֶחְמָד כָּזֶה	*such a nice park*
19.	לֹא הָיָה לִי מֻשָּׂג עַד כַּמָּה גָּדוֹל הֵיכַל הַתַּרְבּוּת	I had no idea how big the Mann Auditorium is.
a.	לֹא הָיָה לִי מֻשָּׂג	*I had no idea* יֵשׁ לִי *I have,* הָיָה לִי *I had (there was to me)*
b.	עַד כַּמָּה גָּדוֹל	*how big it is (until how much big)*
20.	אִמְרִי לִי מַהוּ הַבִּנְיָן הַגָּדוֹל לְפָנֵינוּ	Tell me, what's that big building in front of us?
	לְפָנֵינוּ	*before us.* For the different forms of לִפְנֵי See Grammar Appendix, Note 90.
21.	זֶהוּ תֵּיאַטְרוֹן הַבִּימָה	That's the Habimah Theatre.
22.	יֵשׁ בַּמּוּסֵיאוֹן אֹסֶף גָּדוֹל שֶׁל צִיּוּרִים	There is a big art collection in the museum.
	צִיּוּרִים	*paintings, drawings, sketches* צַיָּר *artist, painter*
23.	הַלְוַאי וְהָיִיתִי יָכוֹל לִקְטֹף אֶת אַחַד הַפְּרָחִים מֵהַגִּנָּה הַזֹּאת	I wish I could pick one of the flowers from this garden.
	הַלְוַאי וְהָיִיתִי יָכוֹל	*I wish I were (able)*
24.	שֶׁלֹּא תָּעֵז לַעֲשׂוֹת זֹאת	Don't you dare do that!
	שֶׁלֹּא תָּעֵז	*dare not!*
25.	אִם שׁוֹטֵר יִרְאֶה אוֹתְךָ תְּשַׁלֵּם קְנָס גָּדוֹל	If a policeman sees you, you'll pay a heavy fine. It is against the law to pick wild flowers in Israel, because they grow sparsely and the government wishes to preserve the beauty of the countryside.
	יִרְאֶה אוֹתְךָ	*he will see you*

26.	הָיִיתִי עָסוּק כַּאֲשֶׁר צִלְצַלְתָּ	I was busy when you phoned.
27.	אֲנַחְנוּ מִצְטַעֲרִים שֶׁהִפְרַעְנוּ בְּשָׁעָה שֶׁהָיִיתָ עָסוּק	I'm sorry we disturbed you when you were busy.
a.	אֲנַחְנוּ מִצְטַעֲרִים שֶׁהִפְרַעְנוּ	*we apologize that we have disturbed (you)*
b.	בְּשָׁעָה שֶׁ־	*when, at the time that*
28.	שַׁמָּשׁ בֵּית הַכְּנֶסֶת: אֵינְכֶם מַפְרִיעִים לִי כְּלָל וּכְלָל	The Synagogue attendant: You are not disturbing me at all.
29.	קָרָאתִי בְּאֵיזֶה מָקוֹם שֶׁבֵּית הַכְּנֶסֶת נִבְנָה בַּמֵּאָה הַשְּׁתֵּים־עֶשְׂרֵה	I read somewhere that the synagogue was built in the twelfth century.
a.	קָרָאתִי בְּאֵיזֶה מָקוֹם	*I read somewhere.*
b.	נִבְנָה	*was built.* נִבְנָה here is not feminine.
c.	בַּמֵּאָה הַשְּׁתֵּים־עֶשְׂרֵה	*the twelfth century.* The Hebrew word for *century* is מֵאָה *hundred.*
30.	חֵלֶק מֵהַבִּנְיָן הַקַּיָּם הַיּוֹם הוּא מִתְּקוּפַת הָרוֹמָאִים	A portion of the building that exists today is from the Roman period.
a.	הַקַּיָּם הַיּוֹם	*that exists today.* —הַ is used with the present tense as the relative pronoun —שֶׁ or אֲשֶׁר *which, that.*
b.	תְּקוּפַת הָרוֹמָאִים	*The Roman period* in Palestine was from the first century B.C. to the beginning of the seventh century A.D.
31.	בֵּית הַכְּנֶסֶת נִשְׂרַף בִּשְׁנַת 1392	The synagogue was burned in the year 1392.
	נִשְׂרַף	*was burned* from שָׂרַף *burn*

32.	חֵלֶק מִבֵּית הַכְּנֶסֶת נִבְנָה מֵחָדָשׁ בַּמֵּאָה הָעֶשְׂרִים	Part of the synagogue was rebuilt in the twentieth century.
	נִבְנָה מֵחָדָשׁ	*was built anew (was rebuilt)* from בָּנָה *build*

Part three

33.	הֵיכָן נוֹלַדְתְּ?	Where were you born?
	נוֹלַדְתְּ	*you (f). were born* from יָלַד *give birth.* See notes 31, 32 above, where —נ is placed at the beginning of the verb to express the passive *what was done.*
34.	נוֹלַדְתִּי בְּתֵל־אָבִיב, גַּם אִמִּי וְסָבָתִי יְלִידוֹת הָעִיר	I was born in Tel-Aviv. My mother and grandmother are also natives of the city.
	סָבָתִי	*my grandmother.* סַבְתָּא *grandma* is often used in Hebrew speech.
	יְלִידוֹת הָעִיר	*(native) born of the city*
35.	כַּמָּה תוֹשָׁבִים יֵשׁ בָּעִיר?	How many inhabitants are there in the city?
	תּוֹשָׁבִים	*residents, inhabitants* from יָשַׁב *dwell, sit*
36.	קָרוֹב לַחֲצִי מִלְיוֹן. תֵּל־אָבִיב הִיא הָעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה בְּיוֹתֵר בָּאָרֶץ	Nearly half a million. Tel-Aviv is the largest city in the country.
a.	קָרוֹב לַחֲצִי מִלְיוֹן	*about half a million* —קָרוֹב לְ *near to*
b.	הָעִיר הַגְּדוֹלָה בְּיוֹתֵר	*the biggest city.* For the use of the superlative, see Grammar Appendix, Note 8b.
37.	בַּשָּׁבוּעַ שֶׁעָבַר הָיִיתִי בְּהֵיכַל הַתַּרְבּוּת	Last week I was in the Mann Auditorium.
38.	בְּקוֹנְצֶרְט שֶׁל הַתִּזְמֹרֶת הַיִּשְׂרְאֵלִית	At a concert given by (of) the Israel Philharmonic Orchestra.

39.	הַאִם בְּיָפוֹ כְּבָר בִּקַּרְתְּ?	Have you already visited Jaffa?
	בִּקַּרְתְּ	*you (f.) visited*
40.	כֵּן, הָיִיתִי בְּמוֹעֲדוֹן לַיְלָה בְּיָפוֹ	Yes, I was in a night club in Jaffa.
	מוֹעֲדוֹן לַיְלָה	*night club*
41.	בִּימֵי הַתַּנַ״ךְ הָיְתָה יָפוֹ נָמֵל גָּדוֹל בְּיִשְׂרָאֵל	In Biblical times, Jaffa was a big port in Israel.
	בִּימֵי הַתַּנַ״ךְ	*in Biblical times.* The Hebrew word תַּנַ״ךְ is an abbreviation of the three main parts of the Hebrew Bible: תּוֹרָה *Law* נְבִיאִים *prophets* and כְּתוּבִים *holy writings.*
42.	כֵּן, אֲנִי יוֹדַעַת, קָרָאתִי עַל הַנָּבִיא יוֹנָה שֶׁהָלַךְ לְיָפוֹ	Yes, I know. I read about the prophet Jonah who went to Jaffa.

שִׁעוּר עֶשְׂרִים וּשְׁלֹשָׁה　מִשְׂרָד לְתַיָּרוּת וְלִנְסִיעוֹת

Lesson twenty three　The travel Agency

What happens

Part one

David Berman wants to tour Israel. His brother, Moshe, directed him to a travel agency in order to arrange his trips in the country. One of Moshe's neighbours works in that office as a typist. She does excellent work both in Hebrew and in English and is hoping for a rise in her salary.

Part two

אֲנִי אֲטַיֵּל בְּיִשְׂרָאֵל　I shall in travel Israel

Mr. Berman tells the clerk that he is interested in travelling and seeing the new settlements. The clerk suggests a four-day tour with a guide and says that Mr. Berman will be collected from his hotel.

אֲנִי כַּתְבָנִית　I am a Typist

Mrs. Fogel describes her work as a typist at the travel agency where she has been working for five years. She says that she types in Hebrew, French and English and she hopes the director of the office is satisfied with her work.

Part three

מִשְׂרָד לְתַיָּרוּת　The Tourist Office

Mr. Berman says that he wants to tour the country with his family. The clerk suggests several tours. Mr. Berman requests information about a four-day trip to the north and reserves four places.

Notes

Part one

1. בִּרְצוֹנֵנוּ לַעֲרֹךְ טִיּוּלִים בָּאָרֶץ — We wish to arrange (some) tours in Israel.
   בִּרְצוֹנֵנוּ — *we wish (it is our desire)*

2. נִכְנַסְתִּי לְמִשְׂרַד סוֹכְנוּת הַנְּסִיעוֹת הַקָּרוֹב לְבֵיתֵנוּ לְבָרֵר פְּרָטִים — I entered the travel agency near our house to clarify some details.
   a. נִכְנַסְתִּי — *I entered.* For this form of the verb, see Grammar Appendix, Note 31.
   b. סוֹכְנוּת הַנְּסִיעוֹת — *travel agency (agency for travels)*
   c. לְבָרֵר פְּרָטִים — *to clarify (some) details*

3. הַפְּקִידָה הִצִּיעָה לִי תָּכְנִיּוֹת אֲחָדוֹת — The secretary offered me a few plans.
   a. הִצִּיעָה לִי — *offered me*
   b. אֲחָדוֹת — *few, ones (f.)* אַחַת *one*

4. אָחִי, מֹשֶׁה, הִפְנָה אוֹתִי לְמִשְׂרַד נְסִיעוֹת — My brother, Moshe, directed me to a travel bureau.
   הִפְנָה אוֹתִי — *directed me*

5. מַזְכִּיר הַחֶבְרָה הוּא חֲבֵרוֹ — The company secretary is his friend.
   חֶבְרָה — *company, firm* also *society.* It is associated with חָבֵר *friend.*

6. אַף שְׁכֵנָתוֹ עוֹבֶדֶת בַּמִּשְׂרָד כְּכַתְבָנִית — Even his neighbour works in the office as a typist.
   אַף — *also, too, even*
   כְּכַתְבָנִית — *as a typist* כָּתַב *write*

7. הִיא עוֹבֶדֶת שֶׁבַע שָׁעוֹת בְּיוֹם — She works seven hours a day.

8. בְּיוֹם שִׁשִּׁי הִיא עוֹבֶדֶת חָמֵשׁ שָׁעוֹת בִּלְבַד — On Fridays, she only works five hours.

בִּלְבַד — *only*. See Lesson 17, note 26a.

9. הִיא מִשְׂתַּכֶּרֶת שֵׁשׁ מֵאוֹת לִירוֹת לְחֹדֶשׁ — She makes six hundred pounds a month.

מִשְׂתַּכֶּרֶת — *earns* (*f.*)

10. הִיא כַּתְבָנִית טוֹבָה מְאֹד — She's a very good typist.

11. הִיא מַדְפִּיסָה בִּמְהִירוּת וּבְדַיְקָנוּת — She types quickly and accurately.

a. הִיא מַדְפִּיסָה — *she types* (*f.*). The same word is used for *she prints.*

b. בִּמְהִירוּת — *fast, speedily* (*with speed*)

c. בְּדַיְקָנוּת — *accurately* (*with accuracy*)

12. מִכְתָּבֶיהָ מֻדְפָּסִים תָּמִיד בְּצוּרָה נָאָה — Her letters are always typed in a neat manner.

a. מִכְתָּבֶיהָ — *her letters*

b. מֻדְפָּסִים — *are printed*

c. בְּצוּרָה נָאָה — *in a neat manner* (*in a nice form*)

13. מַרְבִּית עֲבוֹדַת הַהַדְפָּסָה שֶׁלָּה הִיא בְּעִבְרִית — Most of her typing work is in Hebrew.

a. מַרְבִּית — *most of*

b. הַדְפָּסָה — *typing*, also *printing*

14. אַךְ לְעִתִּים קְרוֹבוֹת הִיא מִשְׁתַּמֶּשֶׁת גַּם בִּמְכוֹנַת כְּתִיבָה אַנְגְּלִית — But often she will also use an English typewriter.

a. לְעִתִּים קְרוֹבוֹת — *often, at frequent times* לְעִתִּים רְחוֹקוֹת *seldom* (*at remote times*)

b. מִשְׁתַּמֶּשֶׁת בּ־ — *uses* (*f.*), always followed by —בּ.

c. מְכוֹנַת כְּתִיבָה — *typewriter* (*a writing machine*)

15. מְנַהֵל הַמִּשְׂרָד מְרֻצֶּה מֵעֲבוֹדָתָהּ — The manager of the office is pleased with her work.

a. מְרֻצֶּה — *is satisfied, is pleased.* It is of the same root as רָצָה *want, desire* (*v.*).

b. מְרֻצֶּה מֵעֲבוֹדָתָהּ — *is pleased with* (*from*) *her work.*

16. הוּא הִבְטִיחַ לְהַעֲלוֹת אֶת מַשְׂכֻּרְתָּהּ בֶּעָתִיד הַקָּרוֹב — He promised to give her a rise in the near future.

a. הִבְטִיחַ לְהַעֲלוֹת — *he promised to raise*

b. מַשְׂכֻּרְתָּהּ — *her salary.* It is associated with מִשְׂתַּכֶּרֶת *earns* in note 9 above.

Part two

17. זֶהוּ בִּקּוּרִי הָרִאשׁוֹן בָּאָרֶץ וּבִרְצוֹנִי לַעֲרֹךְ טִיּוּל — This is my first visit to Israel, and I want to arrange a tour.

a. זֶהוּ בִּקּוּרִי הָרִאשׁוֹן — *this is my first visit.*

b. בָּאָרֶץ — *in the country* i.e. Israel.

18. מָה אַתָּה מְעֻנְיָן לִרְאוֹת בִּמְיֻחָד? — What are you especially interested in seeing?

מְעֻנְיָן — *interested* but מְעַנְיֵן *interesting*

19. בִּרְצוֹנִי לִרְאוֹת אֶת הַיִּשּׁוּבִים הַחֲדָשִׁים — I want to see the new settlements.

יִשּׁוּבִים חֲדָשִׁים — *new settlements*

20. הַאִם הַטִּיּוּל בְּלִוְיַת מַדְרִיךְ? — Is the tour with a guide?

בְּלִוְיַת מַדְרִיךְ — *with the company of a guide*

21. מַה מְּחִירוֹ שֶׁל הַטִּיּוּל לְאַרְבָּעָה יָמִים? — How much will the tour cost for four days?

מְחִירוֹ שֶׁל הַטִּיּוּל — *the price of the excursion* (*its price of the excursion*).

22. הַאִם אֶפְשָׁר לָקַחַת אוֹתִי מֵהַמָּלוֹן? — Is it possible to pick me up at the hotel?

אֶפְשָׁר לָקַחַת אוֹתִי — *it is possible to take me*

23. בְּוַדַּאי, אֲנַחְנוּ נִקַּח אוֹתְךָ מֵהַמָּלוֹן — Of course, we'll pick you up at the hotel.

נִקַּח אוֹתְךָ — *we shall take you* נִקַּח from לָקַח *take*

24. בְּהֶחְלֵט, לְשַׁלֵּם תָּמִיד אֶפְשָׁר. גַּשׁ בְּבַקָּשָׁה לַקֻּפָּה — Of course, it's always possible to pay. Please go to the desk.

a. לְשַׁלֵּם תָּמִיד אֶפְשָׁר — *it is always possible to pay*

b. גַּשׁ — *go, get to* (*draw near*). A verb often used in Hebrew for *go, get to.*

25. מַה תַּפְקִידֵךְ בַּמִּשְׂרָד? — What's your job at the office?

תַּפְקִידֵךְ — *your* (*f.*) *task, your job*

26. אֲנִי עוֹבֶדֶת בַּמִּשְׂרָד כְּכַתְבָנִית — I'm a typist at the office.

27. כַּמָּה שָׁנִים אַתְּ עוֹבֶדֶת? — How many years have you been working?

כַּמָּה שָׁנִים — *how many years* שָׁנָה *a year.* שָׁנִים is an irregular plural.

28. אַתְּ וַדַּאי כַּתְבָנִית טוֹבָה מְאֹד — You certainly must be a good typist.

אַתְּ וַדַּאי כַּתְבָנִית טוֹבָה — *you must be a good typist* וַדַּאי *certainly, surely*

29. כֵּן אֲנִי מַדְפִּיסָה בִּמְהִירוּת וּבְדַיְקָנוּת — Yes, I type quickly and accurately.

30. בְּאֵילוּ שָׂפוֹת אַתְּ מַדְפִּיסָה? — What languages do you type in?

a. בְּאֵילוּ — *in which* (*p.*)

b. שָׂפוֹת — *languages* שָׂפָה *language* also *lip* and *shore* (sea, etc.)

31. אֲנִי מַדְפִּיסָה בְּעִבְרִית, בְּצָרְפָתִית וּבְאַנְגְּלִית — I type in Hebrew, French and English.

Other languages are:

רוּסִית *Russian*

יְוָנִית *Greek*

Also, see Lesson 6, note 11c.

32. הַאִם מְנַהֵל הַמִּשְׂרָד מְרֻצֶּה מֵעֲבוֹדָתֵךְ? — Is the manager of the office satisfied with your work?

33. אֲנִי מְקַוָּה. הוּא הִבְטִיחַ לְהַעֲלוֹת אֶת מַשְׂכֻּרְתִּי בֶּעָתִיד הַקָּרוֹב — I hope so. He promised to give me a rise in the near future.

Part three

34. בְּאֵילוּ אֲזוֹרִים אַתֶּם רוֹצִים לְבַקֵּר? — Which regions do you want to see?

אֲזוֹרִים — *regions*

35. אֲנַחְנוּ רוֹצִים לְבַקֵּר בְּכָל הָאֲזוֹרִים מִדָּן בַּצָּפוֹן וְעַד אֵילַת בַּדָּרוֹם — We want to see all of the regions from Dan in the North to Eilat in the South.

a. דָּן בַּצָּפוֹן — *Dan in the North.* Dan is a kibbutz in the north.

b. אֵילַת — *Eilat.* A Red Sea town in the Gulf of Aqaba which serves as an all-year holiday resort and as a fast growing trade outlet to East Africa and Asia.

c. בַּדָּרוֹם — *in the South.* See Lesson 19, note 10b.

36. יֵשׁ לָנוּ גַּם טִיּוּלִים בְּסִינַי — We also have tours in the Sinai Desert.
סִינַי — *Sinai Desert*

37. אִשְׁתִּי וַאֲנִי מִתְכַּוְּנִים לָטוּס מֵעַל סִינַי — My wife and I are planning to fly over Sinai.

38. יֵשׁ לָנוּ טִיּוּל מְאֻרְגָּן לָאֲזוֹר הַצְּפוֹנִי — We have an organized tour in the northern region.

a. טִיּוּל מְאֻרְגָּן — *organized tour*

b. לָאֲזוֹר הַצְּפוֹנִי — *to the northern region* i.e. Galilee etc.

39. הֵיכָן לָנִים? — Where are we staying overnight?
לָנִים — *stay overnight.* מָלוֹן *hotel* is associated with this word.

40. בַּלַּיְלָה הָרִאשׁוֹן בִּצְפַת, בַּלַּיְלָה הַשֵּׁנִי בְּנַהֲרִיָּה וּבַלַּיְלָה הַשְּׁלִישִׁי בְּקִבּוּץ גִּינּוֹסַר — The first night in Safed, the second night in Nahariya and the third night at Kibbutz Ginossar.

a. צְפַת — *Safed.* A mountainous city in Galilee. It is an ancient city and is known for its old quarters and synagogues and also for its modern artists' colony. It has a pleasant climate and serves as a summer resort.

b. נַהֲרִיָּה — *Nahariya.* A farming community and a popular resort north of Haifa on the Mediterranean. It was founded mainly by German immigrants.

c. בְּקִבּוּץ גִּינּוֹסַר — *At Kibbutz Ginnossar.* A kibbutz and a winter resort north of Tiberias on the shores of the Sea of Galilee.

Lesson twenty four   A football match

What happens

Part one

Mr. Berman tells of the national championship football match that will take place tomorrow. He describes the two teams and says that he was an athlete in his youth. He describes a football match which he saw the previous week. He says that although basketball is an interesting game, he prefers football.

Part two

בְּמִגְרַשׁ הַכַּדּוּר־רֶגֶל   On the Football Field

Mike arrives at the football field when the game is already in progress. Gil tells him that the score is 1 - 0 to the Hakoah team and that player no.10 scored the goal.

מִשְׂחַק הַכַּדּוּר־סַל עַל גְּבִיעַ הַמְּדִינָה   A National Basketball Game

Mr. Berman tells Mr. Tal about the National Cup basketball match between the Hapoel and Maccabi teams.
Mr. Berman says that he is a basketball fan but Mr. Tal prefers football.

Part three

אֲנִי שַׂחְיָן   I am a Swimmer

Gil tells Mike that he participated in a swimming match, set a new record and won the first place. Mike says that he knows how to swim but rarely does.

Notes

Part one

1. מָחָר תֵּעָרֵךְ תַּחֲרוּת כַּדּוּר־רֶגֶל — Tomorrow there will be a football match. (a football match will be held.)

תֵּעָרֵךְ תַּחֲרוּת כַּדּוּר־רֶגֶל — *A football match will be held* תַּחֲרוּת *competition, contest.* In Israel only soccer is played.

2. תַּחֲרוּת חֲשׁוּבָה מְאֹד, חֲצִי הַגְּמָר שֶׁל אֲלִיפוּת הַמְּדִינָה — A very important game, the semi-finals of the National Championship.

a. חֲצִי הַגְּמָר — *semi-final*

b. אֲלִיפוּת הַמְּדִינָה — *national championship* מְדִינָה *state, country*

3. הַתַּחֲרוּת תִּתְקַיֵּם בָּאִצְטַדְיוֹן הָעִירוֹנִי — The game will take place at the Municipal Stadium.

a. תִּתְקַיֵּם — *it will take place (it will exist)*

b. עִירוֹנִי — *municipal* from עִיר *city*

4. הַקְּבוּצוֹת הַמִּשְׁתַּתְּפוֹת בַּתַּחֲרוּת מָחָר הֵן קְבוּצַת הַפּוֹעֵל וּקְבוּצַת מַכַּבִּי — The teams participating in tomorrow's match are Hapoel and Maccabi.

a. הַמִּשְׁתַּתְּפוֹת — *that are participating*

b. הַפּוֹעֵל... מַכַּבִּי — *Hapoel...Maccabi* two leading sports clubs in Israel

5. אֵינֶנִּי סְפּוֹרְטַאי אַךְ אֲנִי חוֹבֵב סְפּוֹרְט — I'm not a sportsman, but I love sports.

חוֹבֵב סְפּוֹרְט — *a lover of sport*

6. כַּאֲשֶׁר לָמַדְתִּי בַּתִּיכוֹן עָסַקְתִּי בְּאַתְלֶטִיקָה קַלָּה — When I went to secondary school, I took part in athletics.

עָסַקְתִּי בְּאַתְלֶטִיקָה קַלָּה — *I took part in athletics* (Hebrew: *light athletics*)

7. אַף פַּעַם לֹא הִצְלַחְתִּי לִקְבּוֹעַ שִׂיא חָדָשׁ — I have never succeeded in breaking a record (to set a new record)

a. אַף פַּעַם לֹא הִצְלַחְתִּי — *I have never succeeded*

b. אַף פַּעַם לֹא — *never (not even once)*

8. תָּמִיד תָּפַסְתִּי מָקוֹם שְׁלִישִׁי אוֹ רְבִיעִי — I always took third or fourth place.

9. עוֹנַת הַכַּדּוּר־רֶגֶל נִפְתְּחָה לִפְנֵי שְׁלֹשָׁה חֳדָשִׁים — The soccer season opened three months ago.

נִפְתְּחָה — *it was opened*

לִפְנֵי שְׁלֹשָׁה חֳדָשִׁים — *three months ago* חֹדֶשׁ *month*

10. הִגַּעְתִּי לַמִּגְרָשׁ בִּתְחִלַּת הַמַּחֲצִית הַשְּׁנִיָּה — I got to the stadium at the beginning of the second half.

a. מִגְרָשׁ — *field, stadium*

b. הַמַּחֲצִית הַשְּׁנִיָּה — *the second half*

11. כַּאֲשֶׁר שַׂחְקָן מִסְפַּר אַרְבַּע בָּעַט אֶת בְּעִיטַת הָעוֹנֶשִׁין — When player number four took the penalty kick.

a. שַׂחְקָן — *player.* מִשְׂחָק *game, play, match* לְשַׂחֵק *to play*

b. בְּעִיטַת עוֹנֶשִׁין — *penalty kick*

12. הַשּׁוֹעֵר, שֶׁהָיָה שַׂחְקַן מִלּוּאִים, לֹא הִצְלִיחַ לַעֲצֹר אֶת הַכַּדּוּר — The goal keeper, a reserve player, failed to stop the ball.

לַעֲצֹר אֶת הַכַּדּוּר — *to stop the ball (to hold back the ball)*

13. הַתּוֹצָאָה הָיְתָה אַחַת אֶפֶס לְטוֹבַת מַכַּבִּי — The score was one–nil in favour of Maccabi.

הַתּוֹצָאָה — *the result, the score*

14. הַשּׁוֹפֵט הָיָה מְצֻיָּן — The referee was excellent.

15. גַּם כַּדּוּר־סַל הוּא מִשְׂחָק מְעַנְיֵן — Basketball is also an interesting game.

16. לְעִתִּים רְחוֹקוֹת אֲנִי הוֹלֵךְ לִרְאוֹת כַּדּוּר־סַל אוֹ תַּחֲרוּת שְׂחִיָּה — Seldom do I go to see basketball games or swimming contests.

a. לְעִתִּים רְחוֹקוֹת — *seldom*

b. תַּחֲרוּת שְׂחִיָּה — *swimming contest*

17. הַסְּפּוֹרְט הֶחָבִיב עָלַי בְּיוֹתֵר הוּא כַּדּוּר־רֶגֶל — My (most) favourite sport is soccer.

הֶחָבִיב עָלַי בְּיוֹתֵר — *my most favourite*

Part two

18. אֲנִי מִצְטַעֵר שֶׁאֵחַרְתִּי — I am sorry I was late.

19. אֵין דָּבָר, זוֹ רַק הַמַּחֲצִית הָרִאשׁוֹנָה שֶׁל הַמִּשְׂחָק — It doesn't matter, it's only the first half of the game.

אֵין דָּבָר — *it doesn't matter*

20. מַה הֵן הַתּוֹצָאוֹת? — What's the score?

21. אַחַת אֶפֶס לְטוֹבַת הַכֹּחַ — One-nil in favour of Hakoah.

הַכֹּחַ — *Hakoah (The Strength)*, name of a football team.

22. מִיהוּ הַשַּׂחְקָן מִסְפָּר עֶשֶׂר? — Who's player number ten?

23. יִצְחָק בֶּרְגֶר, שַׂחְקָן מְצֻיָּן. הוּא הַשַּׂחְקָן שֶׁהִבְקִיעַ אֶת הַשַּׁעַר — Isaac Berger, an excellent player. He's the player who scored the goal.

שֶׁהִבְקִיעַ אֶת הַשַּׁעַר — *who scored the goal*

24. קְבוּצַת הַפּוֹעֵל מְשַׂחֶקֶת יָפֶה. אֵיךְ זֶה קָרָה שֶׁהַשַּׁעַר שֶׁלָּהּ הֻבְקַע? — Hapoel are playing well. How did they get a goal?

25. הַשּׁוֹעֵר לֹא הִצְלִיחַ הַפַּעַם לַעֲצֹר אֶת הַכַּדּוּר — The goal keeper couldn't stop the ball that time.

שׁוֹעֵר — *goal keeper* שַׁעַר *goal post (gate)*

26. מַר שָׁרוֹן, שׁוֹפֵט יָעִיל וְהוֹגֵן — Mr. Sharon, an effective and fair minded referee

יָעִיל וְהוֹגֵן — *effective and fair minded*

27. הַאִם רָאִיתָ אֶת מִשְׂחַק הַכַּדּוּר־סַל עַל גְּבִיעַ הַמְּדִינָה? — Did you see the basketball game for the State Cup?

28. הֵיכָן נֶעֶרְכָה הַתַּחֲרוּת? — Where did the tournament take place?

29. אֵילוּ קְבוּצוֹת הִשְׁתַּתְּפוּ בַּתַּחֲרוּת? — Which teams participated in the tournament?

30. קְבוּצַת הַפּוֹעֵל שִׂחֲקָה נֶגֶד קְבוּצַת מַכַּבִּי — Hapoel played against Maccabi.

שִׂחֲקָה נֶגֶד — *played against*

31. אֵיזוֹ קְבוּצָה זָכְתָה בַּגָּבִיעַ? — Which team won the cup?

זָכְתָה בַּגָּבִיעַ — *it won the cup (won with the cup)*

32. אֵיזֶה סְפּוֹרְט חָבִיב עָלֶיךָ בְּיוֹתֵר? — Which sport is your favourite?

חָבִיב עָלֶיךָ בְּיוֹתֵר — *your most favourite*

Part three

33. שָׁמַעְתִּי שֶׁהִשְׁתַּתַּפְתָּ בַּתַּחֲרוּת שְׂחִיָּה — I heard that you were in the swimming competition.

שָׁמַעְתִּי שֶׁהִשְׁתַּתַּפְתָּ — *I heard that you had participated*

34. מִי הִשִּׂיג אֶת הַתּוֹצָאוֹת הַטּוֹבוֹת בְּיוֹתֵר? — Who obtained the best results?

הַטּוֹבוֹת בְּיוֹתֵר — *best*

טוֹב — *good*

טוֹב יוֹתֵר — *better*

הַטּוֹב בְּיוֹתֵר — *best* (Appendix, Note 8)

35. אֲנִי. הִצְלַחְתִּי לִקְבֹּעַ שִׂיא חָדָשׁ — I did. I set a new record.

אֲנִי — *I (did).*

36. אַךְ הַמַּאֲבָק הָיָה קָשֶׁה — But it was a hard fight.

37. מַה הוּא אֹרֶךְ הַבְּרֵכָה? — What's the length of the pool?

38. בְּאֵיזֶה סִגְנוֹן אַתָּה שׂוֹחֶה? — What style do you swim?

39. אֲנִי שׂוֹחֶה בְּסִגְנוֹן חָזֶה. הַאִם אַתָּה שׂוֹחֶה? — I swim the breast stroke. Do you swim?

40. אֲנִי יוֹדֵעַ לִשְׂחוֹת בְּסִגְנוֹן חֲתִירָה אַךְ אֲנִי שׂוֹחֶה לְעִתִּים רְחוֹקוֹת מְאֹד — I can swim the crawl, but I seldom swim.

סִגְנוֹן חֲתִירָה — *crawl*

Lesson twenty five At the Hairdresser's

What happens

Part one

Mrs. Tal says that she goes to the hairdresser's every Friday. Usually she makes an appointment beforehand. Once a month she has her hair dyed blonde. Today she met Gil coming out of the barber's. He had his beard shaved and his sideburns shortened. She prefers him that way.

Part two

בְּמַחְלֶקֶת הַגְּבָרִים At the Barber's

Gil gives the barber instructions on how to cut his hair. He also wants a shave. Gil and the barber discuss a basketball game they both saw. Gil comments on the excellence of Moshe Mizrahi, the star player, and asks the barber to give him the same haircut as Mizrahi's.

גְּבֶרֶת טַל צוֹבַעַת אֶת הַשֵּׂעָר Mrs. Tal dyes her Hair

Mrs. Tal tells the hairdresser to dye her hair black and to arrange her usual hairdo which her husband finds attractive. She also wants to have her nails painted.

Part three

הַשְּׁכֵנָה הִסְתַּפְּרָה (רְכִילוּת) Our Neighbour had her Hair cut (gossip)

Hannah says that Nili's new haircut makes her look terrible. She says she met Nili at the hairdresser's where she was having her hair done and her eyelashes and eyebrows dyed, and that Nili herself was terrified when she saw the results.

Notes

Part one

1.	אֲנִי הוֹלֶכֶת לַמִּסְפָּרָה בְּכָל יוֹם שִׁשִּׁי	I go to the hairdresser's every Friday.
2.	הַמִּסְפָּרָה הִיא בִּרְחוֹב שֵׁינְקִין	The hairdresser's is in Shenkin Street.
3.	זוֹ הַמִּסְפָּרָה הַטּוֹבָה בְּיוֹתֵר בַּסְּבִיבָה	It's the best hairdresser's in the area.
4.	בְּדֶרֶךְ כְּלָל אֲנִי קוֹבַעַת לִי תּוֹר מֵרֹאשׁ	Usually, I make an appointment in advance.
a.	בְּדֶרֶךְ כְּלָל	*in general, generally*
b.	אֲנִי קוֹבַעַת לִי תּוֹר	*I make an appointment (I fix a turn for myself).*
c.	מֵרֹאשׁ	*in advance (from the head)*
5.	אַחֶרֶת עָלַי לְחַכּוֹת שָׁעוֹת בַּתּוֹר	Otherwise, I have to queue for hours.
a.	אַחֶרֶת	*otherwise*
b.	עָלַי לְחַכּוֹת	*I have to wait*
6.	בַּמִּסְפָּרָה אֲנִי חוֹפֶפֶת אֶת הָרֹאשׁ	At the hairdresser's, I have a shampoo (and set).
7.	וּפַעַם בְּחֹדֶשׁ אֲנִי צוֹבַעַת אֶת שְׂעָרִי	And once a month I dye my hair.
	וּפַעַם בְּחֹדֶשׁ	*and once a month*
8.	הַצֶּבַע הַטִּבְעִי שֶׁל שְׂעָרִי הוּא חוּם	My natural hair colour is brown.

9.	וַאֲנִי צוֹבַעַת אוֹתוֹ בְּלוֹנְדִינִי. גְּבָרִים אוֹהֲבִים בְּלוֹנְדִינִיּוֹת	And I dye it blonde. Blondes have more fun.
	גְּבָרִים אוֹהֲבִים בְּלוֹנְדִינִיּוֹת	*Men like blondes.*
10.	הַיּוֹם כַּאֲשֶׁר נִכְנַסְתִּי לַמִּסְפָּרָה פָּגַשְׁתִּי אֶת גִּיל	Today, when I went into the hairdresser's I met Gil.
	כַּאֲשֶׁר נִכְנַסְתִּי	*when I entered*
11.	הוּא הִסְתַּפֵּר, גִּלֵּחַ אֶת זְקָנוֹ וּשְׂפָמוֹ – בֶּן־אָדָם חָדָשׁ	He'd had a haircut and they'd shaved his beard and moustache—a new man.
a.	הִסְתַּפֵּר	*he'd had a haircut.* From the same root we have מְסַפֵּר *he tells* and סִפּוּר *a story.*
b.	זְקָנוֹ וּשְׂפָמוֹ	*his beard and his moustache*
c.	בֶּן־אָדָם חָדָשׁ	*a new man.* The expression בֶּן־אָדָם is used when it refers to *man* or *mankind* in general.
12.	בָּרוּךְ הַשֵּׁם שֶׁנִּפְטַר מֵהַפֵּאוֹת הָאֲרֻכּוֹת	Thank God, he got rid of those long sideburns.
a.	שֶׁנִּפְטַר	*that he got rid*
b.	פֵּאוֹת אֲרֻכּוֹת	*sideburns (long sidelocks)*
13.	הַתִּסְפֹּרֶת הַקְּצָרָה הוֹלֶמֶת אוֹתוֹ	The short haircut suits him.
	הַתִּסְפֹּרֶת הַקְּצָרָה	*the short haircut*
14.	כְּשֶׁיָּשַׁבְתִּי תַּחַת מְכוֹנַת הַיִּבּוּשׁ נִכְנְסָה שְׁכֶנְתִּי	As I sat under the dryer, my neighbour came in.
a.	כְּשֶׁיָּשַׁבְתִּי	*as I sat* (*in my sitting*). This is a style peculiar to Hebrew.
b.	נִכְנְסָה שְׁכֶנְתִּי	*my neighbour entered.*

15.	הִיא בִּקְּשָׁה לַחֲפֹף אֶת הָרֹאשׁ וְלַעֲשׂוֹת סִלְסוּל תְּמִידִי	She asked for a shampoo and a permanent wave.
	לַעֲשׂוֹת סִלְסוּל תְּמִידִי	*to do a permanent wave*
16.	יֵשׁ לָהּ שֵׂעָר חָלָק וְהִיא אוֹהֶבֶת שֵׂעָר מְסֻלְסָל	She has straight hair but she likes curly hair.
a.	שֵׂעָר חָלָק	*straight hair (smooth hair)*
b.	שֵׂעָר מְסֻלְסָל	*curly hair*
17.	הִיא בִּקְּשָׁה לַחֲפֹף אֶת הָרֹאשׁ בְּמַיִם חַמִּים	She wanted her hair washed in hot water.
	מַיִם חַמִּים	*hot water.* Note also: מַיִם קָרִים *cold water* מַיִם פּוֹשְׁרִים *tepid water*
18.	אֲנִי נוֹהֶגֶת לַחֲפֹף אֶת הָרֹאשׁ בְּמַיִם פּוֹשְׁרִים	I usually have my hair washed in lukewarm water.
	אֲנִי נוֹהֶגֶת לַחֲפֹף	*I usually wash*

Part two

19.	שָׁלוֹם גִּיל, מַה שְּׁלוֹמְךָ?	Barber: Hello, Gil. How are you?
	סַפָּר	*barber.* We have now used several words associated with haircut: מִסְפָּרָה *barber's, hairdresser* (note 1, above) הִסְתַּפֵּר *have a haircut* (note 11) תִּסְפֹּרֶת *a haircut* (note 13).
20.	שְׁלוֹמִי טוֹב, תּוֹדָה. אֲנִי רוֹצֶה לְהִסְתַּפֵּר וּלְהִתְגַּלֵּחַ	I'm fine, thanks. I want a haircut and a shave.

לְהִסְתַּפֵּר וּלְהִתְגַּלֵּחַ — *to have a haircut and to have a shave* (See Grammar Appendix, Note 36, on the use of —הִתְ before a verb.)

21. שֵׁב בְּבַקָּשָׁה — Sit down, please.

22. אֲנִי רוֹצֶה לְהִפָּטֵר מֵהַפֵּאוֹת הָאֲרֻכּוֹת, אַךְ אַל תִּגַּע בְּשְׂפָמִי — I want to get rid of the long sideburns, but don't touch my moustache.

לְהִפָּטֵר — *to get rid of*, see note 12 above.

23. הַאִם אֶפְשָׁר לְקַצֵּר הַרְבֵּה מֵאָחוֹר? — May I cut off a lot from the back?

מֵאָחוֹר — *from behind, from the back*

24. אַתָּה יָכוֹל לְקַצֵּר אַךְ לֹא יוֹתֵר מִדַּי — You can cut it, but not too much.

לֹא יוֹתֵר מִדַּי — *not too much*

25. מְצֻיָּן, אֶתְמוֹל רָאִיתִי תַּחֲרוּת כַּדּוּר־סַל נִפְלָאָה — Great, yesterday I saw a wonderful basketball game.

תַּחֲרוּת כַּדּוּר־סַל נִפְלָאָה — *a wonderful basketball game*

נִפְלָאָה *wonderful* referring to תַּחֲרוּת (f.) *game, contest*

26. כֵּן, גַּם אֲנִי הָיִיתִי שָׁם — Yes, I was there, too.

הָיִיתִי — *I was*. It is of the same pattern as רָאִיתִי *I saw*. See Grammar Appendix, Note 57.

27. אֲחוֹתִי אוֹהֶבֶת אוֹתוֹ מְאֹד — My sister really likes him.

אֲחוֹתִי אוֹהֶבֶת אוֹתוֹ — *My sister likes him.* The word *love* (*v.*) often used in spoken Hebrew as *like* (*v.*).

28. אוּלַי תַּעֲשֶׂה לִי תִּסְפֹּרֶת כְּמוֹ שֶׁלּוֹ? — Could you give me a haircut like his?

a. תַּעֲשֶׂה לִי תִּסְפֹּרֶת — *give me a haircut (do me a haircut)*

b. כְּמוֹ שֶׁלּוֹ — *like his*

29. כֵּן, אֲנִי יוֹדֵעַ שֶׁהַשְּׂעָרוֹת שֶׁלִּי נוֹשְׁרוֹת — Yes, I know that my hair is falling out.

a. שְׂעָרוֹת — *hair* שֵׂעָר *hair* is also used as a collective noun for *hair.*

b. נוֹשְׁרוֹת — *fall, drop* (*f.*) referring to שְׂעָרוֹת (*f.*). We also had הֶעָלִים נוֹשְׁרִים *the leaves fall.* See Lesson 7, note 37.

30. שָׁלוֹם גְּבֶרֶת טַל, שָׁמַרְתִּי לָךְ אֶת הַתּוֹר — Hello, Mrs. Tal, I kept the appointment for you.

31. טוֹב מְאֹד, אֵינֶנִּי אוֹהֶבֶת לְחַכּוֹת שָׁעוֹת לְתוֹרִי — Oh good, I don't like to wait for hours for my turn.

לְחַכּוֹת שָׁעוֹת — *to wait for hours*

32. מַה נַּעֲשֶׂה הַיּוֹם? — What are we going to do today?

33. בִּרְצוֹנִי לִצְבֹּעַ אֶת הַשְּׂעָרוֹת — I want to have my hair dyed.

34. הַאִם בִּרְצוֹנֵךְ גַּם תִּסְרֹקֶת? — Do you also want a set?

תִּסְרֹקֶת — *a set* (hair) לְסָרֵק *to comb* לְהִסְתָּרֵק *to comb oneself*

35. בַּעֲלִי טוֹעֵן שֶׁהִיא הוֹלֶמֶת אוֹתִי — My husband claims that it suits me.

בַּעֲלִי טוֹעֵן — *my husband claims*

36. אֲנִי רוֹצָה לְסַדֵּר אֶת צִפָּרְנַי — I want to have my nails done.

לְסַדֵּר אֶת צִפָּרְנַי — *to do my nails (to set my nails)*

37. אֵיזֶה צֶבַע הַלַּכָּה — What colour polish?
לַכָּה — *lacquer, varnish*

Part three

38. הַשְּׁכֵנָה הִסְתַּפְּרָה – רְכִילוּת — Our neighbour had a haircut—Gossip
רְכִילוּת — *gossip,* רְכִילוּת *to gossip* לְדַבֵּר רְכִילוּת

39. רָאִית, נִילִי הִסְתַּפְּרָה — Have you seen? Nili's had a haircut.
רָאִית? — *have you seen?* Here it is used as an exclamation.

40. וַדַּאי רָאִיתִי, זֶה אָיֹם וְנוֹרָא — Of course, I've seen (it). It's just horrible.
אָיֹם וְנוֹרָא — *dreadful and awful! Just horrible.*

41. הִיא נִרְאֵית בְּדִיּוּק כְּמוֹ קוֹף שֶׁבָּרַח מִגַּן־הַחַיּוֹת — She looks just like a monkey that has escaped from the zoo.
גַּן־הַחַיּוֹת — *zoo (a garden for animals)*

42. מָתַי רָאִית אוֹתָהּ? — When did you see her?

43. בַּמִּסְפָּרָה. כְּשֶׁיָּשַׁבְתִּי תַּחַת מְכוֹנַת הַיִּבּוּשׁ — At the hairdresser's when I was sitting under the dryer.

44. הִיא בִּקְּשָׁה: תִּסְפֹּרֶת, חֲפִיפַת רֹאשׁ וְתִסְרֹקֶת — She asked for a haircut and a shampoo and set.

45. הִיא לֹא צָבְעָה בְּמִקְרֶה אֶת הָרִיסִים וְהַגַּבּוֹת? — She didn't, by chance, have her eyelashes and eyebrows dyed?
בְּמִקְרֶה — *by chance*

46. הִיא עַצְמָהּ נִבְהֲלָה כְּשֶׁהַסַּפָּרִית גָּמְרָה לְהַבְרִישׁ אֶת שְׂעָרָהּ וּלְסָרְקוֹ — She herself was horrified when the hairdresser finished brushing and combing her hair.

a. הִיא עַצְמָהּ נִבְהֲלָה — *she herself was horrified*
b. גָּמְרָה לְהַבְרִישׁ — *she finished to brush.* Note the similarity in sound of לְהַבְרִישׁ and English *to brush.*
c. וּלְסָרְקוֹ — *and to comb it*

47. מוּטָב שֶׁתִּקְנֶה לָהּ פֵּאָה נָכְרִית — She ought to buy herself a wig!
a. מוּטָב שֶׁ־ — *it is better that*
b. פֵּאָה נָכְרִית — *wig (a foreign sidelock)*

What happens

Part one

David Berman tells of a recent visit to the Tal family. Upon their arrival the table was set with a cake, wine and fruit. Danny waited impatiently for the other guests to arrive. A political discussion developed amongst the men while the women sat in a corner gossiping. Ruth served refreshments.

Part two

שִׂיחָה בֵּין גְּבָרִים A Men's Conversation

David compliments Yaakov on his nice flat and asks him about an article in the morning paper. David thinks it was a good article, Yaakov disagrees. Ruth asks them to talk about something more interesting.

דָּן הַזַּלְלָן Danny the Glutton

Danny asks when the guests will arrive and wonders who will eat the cake if they don't come. Uncle David and Aunt Hannah arrive. Ruth serves cake and Danny asks for another piece of cake and two more sweets.

Part three

דָּנִי אוֹהֵב מַתָּנוֹת Danny likes Presents

Susan and Mike come for a visit and bring presents. Danny is enthusiastic about the model car he received.

Ruth suggests that the guests rest a while but Danny wants Mike to go out and play football with him.

Notes

Part one

1.	מִשְׁפַּחַת טַל הִזְמִינָה אוֹרְחִים לְכוֹס קָפֶה	The Tal family invited guests for a cup of coffee.
2.	כַּאֲשֶׁר אֲנַחְנוּ הִגַּעְנוּ הַכֹּל הָיָה מוּכָן עַל הַשֻּׁלְחָן	By the time we arrived everything was ready on the table.
3.	עוּגָה טְעִימָה, בַּקְבּוּק יַיִן וּפֵרוֹת	Delicious cake, a bottle of wine and fruit
4.	הַיְלָדִים מִרְיָם וְדָן, חִכּוּ לָנוּ בְּקֹצֶר רוּחַ	The children, Miriam and Danny, waited impatiently for us.
a.	חִכּוּ לָנוּ	*they waited for us*
b.	בְּקֹצֶר רוּחַ	*impatiently* (*with a shortness of breath*)
5.	דָּנִי פָּתַח אֶת הַדֶּלֶת בְּכָל רֶגַע לִרְאוֹת אִם שְׁאָר הָאוֹרְחִים בָּאִים	Danny opened the door every minute to see if the rest of the guests were coming.
	אִם שְׁאָר הָאוֹרְחִים בָּאִים	*if the remaining guests are coming*
6.	דָּבָר זֶה הִרְגִּיז אֶת רוּת	This made Ruth angry.
a.	דָּבָר זֶה	*this matter*
b.	הִרְגִּיז	*annoyed*
7.	"שֵׁב בִּמְנוּחָה" הִיא אָמְרָה לוֹ	She said to him "sit still".
	שֵׁב בִּמְנוּחָה	*sit quietly*
8.	"גַּם אִם תִּסְתַּכֵּל אֶלֶף פְּעָמִים, הֵם לֹא יַקְדִּימוּ לָבוֹא"	Even if you look one hundred times, they won't come any earlier.

a.	גַּם אִם תִּסְתַּכֵּל	*even if you look*
b.	הֵם לֹא יַקְדִּימוּ לָבוֹא	*they will not come earlier (they will not be early to come).*
9.	סוֹף סוֹף נִשְׁמַע הַצִּלְצוּל, דָּנִי פָּתַח אֶת הַדֶּלֶת	Finally a ring was heard; Danny opened the door.
	נִשְׁמַע הַצִּלְצוּל	*a ring was heard.* Note the use of נ at the beginning of the verb. שָׁמַע *he heard* נִשְׁמַע *he was heard* רָאָה *he saw* נִרְאָה *he was seen* (Appendix, 31, 58)
10.	שְׁאָר הָאוֹרְחִים הִגִּיעוּ	The rest of the guests arrived.
11.	הִתְפַּתֵּחַ וִכּוּחַ עַל הַבְּחִירוֹת הַקְּרוֹבוֹת וְעַל הַמִּפְלָגוֹת	A debate developed over the coming elections and the political parties.
a.	הִתְפַּתֵּחַ וִכּוּחַ	*a debate (discussion) developed*
b.	הַבְּחִירוֹת הַקְּרוֹבוֹת	*the coming elections* קָרוֹב *near*
12.	נוֹשֵׂא זֶה לֹא עִנְיֵן אֶת הַנָּשִׁים	This subject didn't interest the women.
	עִנְיֵן	*interest (v.).* Note מְעַנְיֵן *interesting* and מְעֻנְיָן *interested*
13.	הֵן יָשְׁבוּ יַחַד בְּפִנַּת הַחֶדֶר	They sat together in a corner of the room
	בְּפִנַּת הַחֶדֶר	*in a corner of the room*
14.	וְשׂוֹחֲחוּ עַל הָרָהִיטִים, עַל קְנִיּוֹת וּרְכִילוּת	and spoke about furniture, shopping and gossip.
	עַל קְנִיּוֹת וּרְכִילוּת	*about shopping and gossip*
15.	רוּת שָׁאֲלָה אִם לְהַגִּישׁ קָפֶה, תֵּה אוֹ אוּלַי כּוֹס יַיִן	Ruth asked if she could serve coffee, tea or a glass of wine.

	אִם לְהַגִּישׁ קָפֶה	*whether to offer coffee.* אִם *if* is rendered *whether* after the verb שָׁאַל
16.	הִיא הִגִּישָׁה גַּם עוּגוֹת וּמַמְתַּקִּים :	She also served cakes and sweets.
	מַמְתַּקִּים	*sweets (sweet food)* מָתוֹק *sweet*
17.	הַיְלָדִים רָצוּ רַק מַמְתַּקִּים וּמַשְׁקֶה קַר	The children wanted only sweets and a cold drink.

Part two

18.	תּוֹדָה. יֵשׁ לָכֶם דִּירָה נָאָה. הַוִּילוֹנוֹת יָפִים מְאֹד	Thanks, you have a nice flat. The curtains are very beautiful.
		וִילוֹן (m.) *curtain*
19.	לְאֵיזֶה צַד פּוֹנָה הַמִּרְפֶּסֶת שֶׁל הַחֶדֶר הַגָּדוֹל?	To which side does the living room balcony face?
	לְאֵיזֶה צַד פּוֹנָה הַמִּרְפֶּסֶת	*to which side does the balcony face?* פּוֹנֶה *facing* פָּנִים *face (n.)*
20.	לְצַד מַעֲרָב, צַד הַיָּם	To the west, toward the sea.
a.	לְצַד מַעֲרָב	*to the west (to the side of the west)* See Lesson 19, note 10b.
b.	צַד הַיָּם	*toward the sea (the side of the sea)* i.e. the Mediterranean Sea which lies to the west of the country.
21.	מִן הַיָּם נוֹשֶׁבֶת רוּחַ בַּבֹּקֶר וּבָעֶרֶב.	The breeze blows in from the sea in the morning and in the evening.
	מִן הַיָּם נוֹשֶׁבֶת רוּחַ	*from the sea a breeze blows.* The regular order of the words here would be רוּחַ נוֹשֶׁבֶת מִן הַיָּם. Here the emphasis is on the fact that *from the sea the breeze is blowing.* רוּחַ *wind, breeze.*

22.	קָרָאתָ בְּעִתּוֹן "הָאָרֶץ" אֶת הַמַּאֲמָר שֶׁל חֲבֵר הַכְּנֶסֶת יִצְחָקִי?	Did you read the article in "Haaretz" by Itzhaki, the Knesset member?
a.	"הָאָרֶץ"	*The Country*, the name of the daily independent morning newspaper in Hebrew.
b.	מַאֲמָר	*an article* (newspaper) from אָמַר *say*
c.	חֲבֵר הַכְּנֶסֶת	*the Knesset member.*
23.	מַה דַּעְתְּךָ עָלָיו?	What do you think of it?
24.	מַאֲמָר טוֹב? כְּבָר מִזְּמַן לֹא קָרָאתִי מַאֲמָר כָּל כָּךְ גָּרוּעַ	A good article? It's been a long time since I read such a bad article.
a.	מַאֲמָר טוֹב	*a good article?* Here you can render this phrase *Did I hear you saying this is a good article?* Of course, Yaakov does not agree with David.
b.	כְּבָר מִזְּמַן לֹא קָרָאתִי	*a long time since I have read*
c.	כָּל כָּךְ גָּרוּעַ	*so bad, so inferior*
25.	מָה אַתָּה מְדַבֵּר?	What are you talking about?
26.	הִנֵּה, שׁוּב אַתֶּם מִתְוַכְּחִים עַל פּוֹלִיטִיקָה	Here you are arguing about politics again.
	שׁוּב אַתֶּם מִתְוַכְּחִים	*again you are arguing* וִכּוּחַ *argument debate, discussion*
27.	הַאֵינְכֶם יְכוֹלִים לְדַבֵּר פַּעַם גַּם עַל דְּבָרִים יוֹתֵר מְעַנְיְנִים?	Can't you talk about something more interesting for once?
a.	הַאֵינְכֶם יְכוֹלִים לְדַבֵּר פַּעַם	*can't you talk (for) once*
b.	דְּבָרִים יוֹתֵר מְעַנְיְנִים	*more interesting matters*
28.	בֹּאוּ לִשְׁתּוֹת קָפֶה	Let's drink coffee.

29.	דָּן הַזַּלְלָן	Danny, the glutton
30.	מָתַי יָבוֹאוּ הָאוֹרְחִים?	When will the guests come?
31.	הֵם הָיוּ צְרִיכִים לְהַגִּיעַ כְּבָר לִפְנֵי שָׁעָה	They should have arrived an hour ago.
	הֵם הָיוּ צְרִיכִים לְהַגִּיעַ	*they should have arrived.* Study this sentence carefully. Note Hebrew לְהַגִּיעַ *to arrive*, English *arrived.* Other examples: הֵם הָיוּ צְרִיכִים לֶאֱכֹל *They should have eaten.* אֲנִי הָיִיתִי צָרִיךְ לִנְסֹעַ *I should have travelled.* הוּא הָיָה צָרִיךְ לִהְיוֹת שָׁם *He should have been there.*
32.	הֵם יַגִּיעוּ בְּכָל רֶגַע	They'll arrive any minute.
33.	מַה יִּהְיֶה אִם הֵם לֹא יָבוֹאוּ, מִי יֹאכַל אֶת הָעוּגָה?	What will happen if they don't come? Who will eat the cake?
	מַה יִּהְיֶה	*what will happen? (what will be?)*
34.	עַכְשָׁו אֲנִי מְבִינָה מַדּוּעַ אַתָּה דּוֹאֵג כָּל כָּךְ. הִנֵּה הֵם בָּאִים	Now I understand why you're so worried. Here they come.
35.	לֹא קָרָה כְּלוּם, הָלַכְנוּ בָּרֶגֶל כָּל הַדֶּרֶךְ	Nothing happened, we walked all the way.
a.	לֹא קָרָה כְּלוּם	*nothing happened* לֹא כְלוּם *nothing*
b.	הָלַכְנוּ בָּרֶגֶל	*we walked on foot*
36.	הִתְכַּבְּדוּ בְּבַקָּשָׁה	Help yourselves, please. *help yourselves (honour yourselves).* כָּבוֹד *honour, respect*

37.	יֵשׁ מַסְפִּיק. הִנֵּה עוֹד פְּרוּסָה דָּנִי	There is enough. Here's another piece, Danny.
38.	עוֹד שְׁתֵּי סֻכָּרִיּוֹת וַאֲנִי הוֹלֵךְ	Two more sweets and I'm going.
	סֻכָּרִיּוֹת	*sweets* סֻכָּר *sugar*
39.	הַיֶּלֶד הַזֶּה יָכוֹל לִחְיוֹת רַק עַל עוּגוֹת וְסֻכָּרִיּוֹת	This boy can live on cakes and sweets alone.
	יָכוֹל לִחְיוֹת	*he can live* לִחְיוֹת *to live* לִהְיוֹת *to be*

Part three

40.	יָפֶה שֶׁבָּאתֶם כְּבָר, מַיְיק, בֹּא לְשַׂחֵק	I'm glad (it's nice) you've come already, Mike, let's play.
	יָפֶה שֶׁכְּבָר בָּאתֶם	*it is nice that you have already arrived*
41.	הֵכַנְתִּי אֶת הָרַכֶּבֶת הַחַשְׁמַלִּית	I've set up the electric train.
a.	הֵכַנְתִּי	*I have prepared, I have set up ready*
b.	הָרַכֶּבֶת הַחַשְׁמַלִּית	*the electric train*
42.	הָרַכֶּבֶת הַחַשְׁמַלִּית שֶׁלְּךָ לֹא מְעַנְיֶנֶת אֶת מַיְיק	Your electric train doesn't interest Mike.
43.	אֵיךְ יְדַעְתֶּם שֶׁאֲנִי אוֹהֵב מְכוֹנִיּוֹת?	How did you know that I like cars?
44.	זוֹ בְּדִיּוּק הַמְּכוֹנִית שֶׁהוּא רָצָה	That's exactly the car he wanted.
45.	אֲנִי אוֹהֵב לְקַבֵּל מַתָּנוֹת וּבִמְיֻחָד מַתָּנוֹת כָּאֵלֶּה	I love to get presents and especially presents like these.
	מַתָּנוֹת כָּאֵלֶּה	*presents like these*

46.	אַתֶּם וַדַּאי עֲיֵפִים מֵהַדֶּרֶךְ	Surely, you are tired from the trip.
	אַתֶּם וַדַּאי עֲיֵפִים	*you must be tired (you are certainly tired)*
	עֲיֵפִים מֵהַדֶּרֶךְ	*tired from being on the road (tired from the way)*
47.	אוּלַי תִּשְׁכְּבוּ לָנוּחַ לְשָׁעָה שְׁעָתַיִם?	Will you lie down for an hour or two?
a.	תִּשְׁכְּבוּ לָנוּחַ	*you will lie down to rest*
b.	שָׁעָה שְׁעָתַיִם	*an hour or two* שְׁעָתַיִם *two hours*
48.	מַה פִּתְאֹם לִישֹׁן? מַיְיק בֹּא לְשַׂחֵק בַּחוּץ	What do you mean, sleep? Mike, come to play outside.
	מַה פִּתְאֹם לִישֹׁן	*who wants to sleep? (Why suddenly to sleep?)*
49.	קְבוּצַת הַכַּדּוּר־רֶגֶל מְחַכָּה לָנוּ	The soccer team is waiting for us.
	מְחַכָּה לָנוּ	*it is waiting for us*

27 שִׁעוּר עֶשְׂרִים וְשִׁבְעָה אֵצֶל רוֹפֵא הַשִּׁנַּיִם

Lesson twenty seven At the Dentist's

What happens

Part one

Mr. Tal has toothache.

Last year he had two teeth extracted and replaced by false ones. His dentist is expensive but good. His wife's gums ache, Danny's tooth needs crowning and Miriam needs a root filling.

Part two

יַעֲקֹב טַל עוֹשֶׂה סְתִימָה Jacob Tal has a Filling

Mr. Tal says he has toothache. A tooth needs filling. The dentist says that he can fill it painlessly and that the filling Mr. Tal wants is more expensive than the usual one. Mr. Tal agrees to pay.

רוֹפֵא הַשִּׁנַּיִם הַיַּקְרָן The expensive Dentist

Mr. Tal is looking for a good dentist. Mr. Berman recommends one that is good but expensive. He tells Mr. Tal that he has a prescription that will relieve his pain and that his frequent visits to the dentist have made him an expert on the subject.

Part three

אֵצֶל רוֹפֵא הַשִּׁנַּיִם At the Dentist's

The Tal family is at the dentist's. Danny needs a brace and is told to return Thursday morning. Miriam wants a painless root filling.

Mrs. Tal needs a routine check-up and Mr. Tal has a tooth that should be extracted.

Notes

Part one

1.	יֵשׁ לִי כְּאֵב שִׁנַּיִם חָזָק	I have a bad toothache.
2.	רוֹפֵא הַשִּׁנַּיִם גָּר לְיָדֵנוּ	The dentist lives near us.
	גָּר לְיָדֵנוּ	*lives near us*
3.	הַפַּעַם כּוֹאֶבֶת לִי שֵׁן בִּינָה	This time a wisdom tooth is hurting me.
	כּוֹאֶבֶת לִי שֵׁן	*my tooth hurts (a tooth is hurting me).* Note that שֵׁן *tooth* is feminine. See Appendix, Note 13.
4.	יֵשׁ בָּהּ וַדַּאי חוֹר אוֹ אוּלַי כֻּלָּהּ רְקוּבָה	There's probably a hole in the tooth or else it is completely decayed.
	אוּלַי כֻּלָּהּ רְקוּבָה	*perhaps all of it is decayed*
5.	בַּשָּׁנָה שֶׁעָבְרָה עָקְרוּ לִי שְׁתֵּי שִׁנַּיִם	Last year I had two teeth extracted.
	עָקְרוּ לִי שְׁתֵּי שִׁנַּיִם	*they extracted two teeth for me*
6.	וְהָיוּ צְרִיכִים לִקְבֹּעַ לִי שְׁתֵּי שִׁנַּיִם תּוֹתָבוֹת	And they had to put in two false teeth.
	הָיוּ צְרִיכִים לִקְבֹּעַ	*they had to put in*
7.	בַּשֵּׁן הַקִּדְמִית הָעֶלְיוֹנָה נָפְלָה הַסְּתִימָה	The filling fell out of the upper front tooth.
	בַּשֵּׁן הַקִּדְמִית הָעֶלְיוֹנָה	*in the upper front tooth*
8.	זוֹ הָיְתָה סְתִימָה מִזָּהָב	It was a gold filling.
9.	הָיִיתִי רוֹצֶה שֶׁהַפַּעַם יַעֲשֶׂה לִי הָרוֹפֵא סְתִימָה מִכֶּסֶף	This time I would like the dentist to make me a silver filling.

10.	בְּדֶרֶךְ כְּלָל הוּא מְצַלֵּם אֶת אֵזוֹר הַכְּאֵב	Usually he takes an X-ray in the area of the pain.
11.	רוֹפֵא הַשִּׁנַּיִם שֶׁלִּי הוּא יַקְרָן גָּדוֹל	My dentist is very expensive.
	יַקְרָן	*person who charges high prices*
12.	לְאִשְׁתִּי כּוֹאֲבִים הַחֲנִיכַיִם	My wife's gums hurt her.
	חֲנִיכַיִם	*gums*. It is used in the plural only.
13.	דָּנִי זָקוּק לְכֶתֶר	Danny needs a crown.
14.	מִרְיָם זְקוּקָה לְטִפּוּל שֹׁרֶשׁ	Miriam needs some root treatment.

Part two

15.	אֵיזוֹ שֵׁן כּוֹאֶבֶת לְךָ הַפַּעַם?	Which tooth hurts you this time?
16.	אֵינֶנִּי יוֹדֵעַ בְּדִיּוּק	I don't know exactly.
17.	נִדְמֶה לִי שֶׁזּוֹ שֵׁן הַבִּינָה	I believe it's the wisdom tooth.
a.	נִדְמֶה לִי	*I believe (it seems to me)*
b.	שֶׁזּוֹ	*that this*
18.	הַאִם אֶפְשָׁר לַעֲשׂוֹת לִי סְתִימָה בְּצֶבַע הַשֵּׁן?	Is it possible to make me a filling the colour of the tooth?
19.	כֵּן, אַךְ סְתִימָה כָּזֹאת תַּעֲלֶה לְךָ יוֹתֵר בְּיֹקֶר מִסְּתִימָה רְגִילָה	Yes, but the filling will cost you more than a normal filling.
	יוֹתֵר בְּיֹקֶר	*more expensive*
20.	זֶה יָקָר, אַךְ אֵין בְּרֵירָה, בְּגִילִי חָשׁוּב גַּם הַיּוֹפִי	Expensive, but there's no choice, even at my age beauty is important.
	בְּגִילִי חָשׁוּב גַּם הַיּוֹפִי	*at my age beauty is also important*

21.	הַשֵּׁן הַקִּדְמִית כּוֹאֶבֶת לִי	My front tooth hurts me.
22.	יֵשׁ לִי תְּרוּפָה לְהַשְׁקִיט אֶת הַכְּאֵב	I have a prescription to dull the pain.
23.	הַבִּקּוּרִים שֶׁלִּי אֵצֶל רוֹפֵא הַשִּׁנַּיִם הָפְכוּ אוֹתִי לְמֻמְחֶה	My visits to the dentist have made me an expert.
	הָפְכוּ אוֹתִי לְמֻמְחֶה	*they have made me an expert (they turned me into an expert).*

Part three

24.	מַה קָּרָה? לְכֻלְּכֶם יֵשׁ בְּעָיוֹת עִם הַשִּׁנַּיִם?	What has happened, do you all have problems with your teeth?
25.	כֵּן, כֻּלָּנוּ בָּאנוּ לְטִפּוּל	Yes, we've all come for treatment.
26.	מִי הָרִאשׁוֹן בַּתּוֹר	Who's turn is it first?
27.	נַתְחִיל בְּדָנִי	We'll start with Danny.
28.	אֲנִי זָקוּק לְגֶשֶׁר	I need a bridge.
29.	כַּאֲשֶׁר הַטֶּכְנַאי שֶׁלָּנוּ יִהְיֶה פֹּה	When the technician is (will be) here
30.	אֲנִי זְקוּקָה לְטִפּוּל שֹׁרֶשׁ, טִפּוּל לְלֹא כְּאֵבִים	I need painless root treatment.
	לְלֹא כְּאֵבִים	*without pain*
31.	בְּסֵדֶר, תִּכָּנְסִי אֵלַי מָחָר בְּשָׁעָה שָׁלֹשׁ	Okay, come in to see me tomorrow at three.
	תִּכָּנְסִי אֵלַי	*come to me (come in to me)*

32. אֲנִי בָּאתִי רַק לִבְדִיקָה I've only come for a check-up.
לִבְדִיקָה *for a check-up, for an examination*

33. אֵין צֹרֶךְ בְּטִפּוּל There is no need for treatment.

34. לִי יֵשׁ שֵׁן רְקוּבָה I have a decayed tooth.

35. אֲנִי חוֹשֵׁב שֶׁצָּרִיךְ I think it must be.

36. אַל דְּאָגָה No need to worry!

37. עוֹד רֶגַע וְהַשֵּׁן בַּחוּץ In a moment, the tooth will be (is) out.

What happens

Part one

Mr. Tal briefly describes some of the Jewish festivals :
The New Year, the Day of Atonement, Sukkot (tabernacles), Simhat Torah, Purim, and the Passover. He mentions some of the observances connected with these festivals.

Part two

הֶחָג הָאָהוּב עָלַי My Favourite Festival
Danny and Miriam are discussing festivals. Miriam likes Passover best because it is the festival of the spring and she likes the Seder. Danny prefers Purim because then people wear costumes, make noise and go to parties.

חַג הַחֲנֻכָּה The Festival of Hanukkah
Miriam asks her mother for ingredients to make Hanukkah doughnuts. She talks about the decorations they prepared for the holiday and the torch light parade the pupils will conduct.

Part three

יוֹם הָעַצְמָאוּת Independence Day
Independence Day is coming and Danny wants to decorate the balcony with a flag. Mrs. Tal comments on the decorations in the shop windows and the general holiday atmosphere. Danny wants to join his parents in celebrating in the streets on Independence Day night. Mrs. Tal agrees.

Part one

1. מוֹעֲדִים Festivals.
For a list of the main Jewish festivals, see Grammar Appendix, Note 18.

2. אֲנַחְנוּ אוֹהֲבִים מְאֹד אֶת הַחַגִּים We like the holidays very much.

חַגִּים *festivals, feasts, holidays.* This word is more frequently used than מוֹעֲדִים.

3. דָּנִי הוֹלֵךְ אִתִּי לְבֵית הַכְּנֶסֶת Danny goes to the synagogue with me.

4. בְּרֹאשׁ הַשָּׁנָה הוּא אוֹהֵב לִשְׁמֹעַ אֶת תְּקִיעַת הַשּׁוֹפָר He likes to hear the sound of the shofar on Rosh Hashana.

a. רֹאשׁ הַשָּׁנָה *The New Year* (*the head of the year*). It is observed for two days, and usually falls during September.

b. שׁוֹפָר *shofar, ram's horn.* A distinctive ceremonial of the New Year's day is the sounding of the shofar, a symbolic call to repentance. New Year in the Jewish calendar is a solemn time.

5. יוֹם כִּפּוּר חָל בַּעֲשָׂרָה בְּתִשְׁרֵי Yom Kippur falls on the 10th of Tishri.

a. יוֹם כִּפּוּר *Day of Atonement*, the most sacred day in the Jewish calendar. It is observed as a fast day. The entire day is devoted to worship in the synagogue.

b. חָל בַּעֲשָׂרָה בְּתִשְׁרֵי *it falls on the tenth of Tishri*

חָל *occurs, falls.* תִּשְׁרֵי *Tishri* (about September) the first month in the Jewish year. For a list of the Hebrew months, see Grammar Appendix, Note 17.

6. בְּעֶרֶב יוֹם כִּפּוּר אַחֲרֵי הָאֲרוּחָה מַתְחִיל הַצּוֹם The fast begins on the eve of Yom Kippur after the meal.

בְּעֶרֶב יוֹם כִּפּוּר *on the eve of the Day of Atonement*

7. אַחֲרֵי הָאֲרוּחָה אָנוּ הוֹלְכִים לְבֵית הַכְּנֶסֶת לִתְפִלַּת "כָּל נִדְרֵי" After the meal, we go to the synagogue for the Kol Nidrei prayer.

תְּפִלַּת "כָּל נִדְרֵי" the prayer of *Kol Nidrei* (*all vows*). It is a prayer, over 1600 years old, asking for absolution of all forced or harmful personal vows. It is recited at the beginning of the evening service of *Yom Kippur*.

8. הֶחָג הַבָּא הוּא חַג הַסֻּכּוֹת The next holiday is the festival of Sukkot.

חַג הַסֻּכּוֹת *Sukkot, the Feast of Tabernacles* (*the feast of the booths*). This commemorates the wandering of the Israelites in the wilderness for 40 years, when they had to live in temporary booth-like structures. Nowadays it is customary to build a *sukkah* in honour of this festival and to eat all meals there for seven days.

9. בְּמֶשֶׁךְ כָּל יְמֵי הֶחָג אֲנַחְנוּ אוֹכְלִים בַּסֻּכָּה Throughout all the days of the festival we eat in the sukkah (tabernacle).

יְמֵי הֶחָג *the days of the festival*

10. דָּנִי אוֹהֵב אֶת חַג שִׂמְחַת תּוֹרָה כִּי בּוֹ Danny likes Simhat Torah because then he can jump, dance and sing in the

הוּא יָכוֹל לִקְפֹּץ, לִרְקֹד וְלָשִׁיר בְּבֵית הַכְּנֶסֶת — synagogue.

שִׂמְחַת תּוֹרָה — *the feast of Simhat Torah* (*The Rejoicing of the Law*). The festival is observed on the day following *Sukkot* to celebrate the annual conclusion of the reading of the Five Books of Moses in the course of the year. (A portion of the Law is read every week on the Sabbath throughout the year.) It is a day of rejoicing and dancing in the synagogue.

11. חַג הַחֲנֻכָּה נִמְשָׁךְ שְׁמוֹנָה יָמִים — The festival of Hanukkah lasts eight days.

חַג הַחֲנֻכָּה — *Hanukkah, the Feast of Dedication.* Also known as the *Feast of Lights*. This commemorates the rededication of the Temple in Jerusalem. The Syrian Greeks had tried to suppress the practice of Judaism but were defeated by the Jews, who, on entering the Temple, found a small amount of oil which burned for eight days. Therefore, candles are lit each evening during *Hanukkah* — one on the first night, two on the second etc. until eight are lit on the last night.

12. בְּחַג הַחֲנֻכָּה מַדְלִיקִים נֵרוֹת בַּחֲנֻכִּיָּה — During Hanukkah one lights candles in a Hanukkah lamp.

חֲנֻכִּיָּה — *a hanukkah lamp*

13. חַג פּוּרִים הוּא חַג עַלִּיז — The festival of Purim is a gay holiday.

חַג פּוּרִים — *The Feast of Purim* or *Lots*, the festival celebrating the rescue of the Jews from destruction by Haman who cast lots to determine on which day to destroy the Jews. The story is described in the Biblical Book of Esther. It is a joyous day, especially for children.

14. פּוּרִים הוּא חַג הָאָהוּב עַל הַיְלָדִים — Purim is the favourite holiday of children.

15. חַג הַפֶּסַח הוּא חַג הָאָבִיב — The Passover is the festival of spring.

a. חַג הַפֶּסַח — *the Feast of the Passover*, celebrated in the spring to commemorate the Exodus from Egypt. For eight days Jews eat *matza* (unleavened bread) and may not eat anything containing leaven, during the Passover.

b. חַג הָאָבִיב — *the Festival of Spring*

16. אֲנִי אוֹהֵב בִּמְיֻחָד אֶת לֵיל הַסֵּדֶר — I especially like the Seder night.

לֵיל הַסֵּדֶר — *the Seder night*, a ceremonial festive family meal commemorating the Exodus from Egypt. A special account of the Exodus, called הַגָּדָה *Haggadah* is read during the first night of the Passover (first two nights outside Israel).

Part two

17. מִרְיָם, אֵיזֶה חַג אַתְּ אוֹהֶבֶת בִּמְיֻחָד? — Miriam, which is your favourite holiday?

18.	מַדּוּעַ דַּוְקָא אֶת חַג הַפֶּסַח?	Why, of all holidays, Passover?
	דַּוְקָא	*especially, only.* See Lesson 14, note 27.
19.	כִּי חַג הַפֶּסַח הוּא חַג הָאָבִיב	Because the feast of the Passover is the festival of spring.
20.	אֲנִי אוֹהֵב אֶת חַג הַפֶּסַח כִּי בְּכָל יְמֵי הֶחָג אוֹכְלִים מַצּוֹת	I like the Passover because you eat matza throughout the festival.
21.	קְרִיאַת הַהַגָּדָה בְּלֵיל הַסֵּדֶר	the reading of the Haggadah on Seder night
22.	הֶחָג הָאָהוּב עָלַי הוּא פּוּרִים	My favourite holiday is Purim.
23.	מִתְחַפְּשִׂים, מַרְעִישִׁים, עוֹרְכִים מְסִבּוֹת וּבִכְלָל שָׂמֵחַ	We dress up, make noise, hold parties and, all in all, it's happy.
a.	מִתְחַפְּשִׂים	*(people) are disguising themselves*
b.	מַרְעִישִׁים	*making noise* רַעַשׁ *noise*
c.	עוֹרְכִים מְסִבּוֹת	*holding parties*
d.	וּבִכְלָל שָׂמֵחַ	*and it is generally jolly*
24.	לְמָה הִתְחַפַּשְׂתָּ בַּשָּׁנָה שֶׁעָבְרָה?	What did you dress up as last year?
	לְמָה הִתְחַפַּשְׂתָּ	*As what did you disguise yourself?*
25.	הַשָּׁנָה אֲנִי רוֹצֶה לְהִתְחַפֵּשׂ לְתֵבַת נֹחַ	I want to dress up as Noah's ark.
	תֵּבַת נֹחַ	*Noah's Ark*
26.	אֲנַחְנוּ לוֹמְדִים לְהָכִין לְבִיבוֹת לִכְבוֹד הַחֲנֻכָּה	We are learning how to make doughnuts for Hanukkah.

	אֲנַחְנוּ לוֹמְדִים לְהָכִין לְבִיבוֹת	*we are learning (how) to prepare doughnuts* It is traditional to eat doughnuts during *Hanukkah.*
27.	הַאִם הֲכַנְתֶּם סְבִיבוֹנִים?	Did you prepare tops?
	סְבִיבוֹן	*toy top.* Children usually play with tops during Hanukkah.
28.	כֵּן, תָּלִינוּ סְבִיבוֹן עֲנָק, עָשׂוּי מִנְּיָר	Yes, we hung up a giant top made of paper.
a.	סְבִיבוֹן עֲנָק	*a giant top*
b.	עָשׂוּי מִנְּיָר	*made of paper*
29.	הַאִם אַתֶּם עוֹרְכִים הַשָּׁנָה תַּהֲלוּכַת לַפִּידִים?	Are you holding a torchlight parade this year?
	תַּהֲלוּכַת לַפִּידִים	*a procession of torches,* usually held during this festival.
30.	כֵּן, כָּל הַתַּלְמִידִים מִשְׁתַּתְּפִים	Yes, all the pupils are participating.
31.	גַּם אֲנִי בְּגִילְךָ אָהַבְתִּי לְקַבֵּל דְּמֵי חֲנֻכָּה	At your age, I liked to get Hanukkah money, too.
	דְּמֵי חֲנֻכָּה	*Hanukkah money gift*

Part three

32.	אִמָּא, יוֹם הָעַצְמָאוּת מִתְקָרֵב, צָרִיךְ לְקַשֵּׁט אֶת מִרְפֶּסֶת הַבַּיִת	Mother, Independence Day is getting closer, we have to decorate the balcony of the house.
a.	יוֹם הָעַצְמָאוּת	*Independence Day,* a public holiday in Israel celebrating the anniversary of the signing of the Declaration of the State of Israel on May 14, 1948.

b. מִתְקָרֵב *is drawing near*

c. צָרִיךְ לְקַשֵּׁט *it is necessary to decorate*

33. נְקַשֵּׁט אוֹתָהּ בְּמָגֵן דָּוִד כָּחֹל לָבָן וְדֶגֶל הַמְּדִינָה We shall decorate it with a blue and white Star of David and the national flag.

a. מָגֵן דָּוִד *Magen David* (*Shield of David*). The most frequently used emblem of the Jew and Judaism today. Its origin is unknown.

b. כָּחֹל לָבָן *blue and white*, the national colours of the Israeli flag.

34. הַאִם רָאִיתָ אֶת הַקִּשּׁוּטִים הַצִּבְעוֹנִיִּים בְּחַלּוֹנוֹת הָרַאֲוָה? Did you see the colourful decorations in the display windows?

a. קִשּׁוּטִים צִבְעוֹנִיִּים *colourful decorations*

b. חַלּוֹנוֹת הָרַאֲוָה *the display windows* רַאֲוָה *display* from רָאָה *see.*

35. יֵשׁ אֲוִירַת חַג בְּכָל פִּנָּה There is a holiday atmosphere in every corner.

אֲוִירַת חַג *holiday atmosphere*

36. בְּחַג הַלְּאֻמִּי שֶׁלָּנוּ אֵינֶנִּי רוֹצָה לְהִשָּׁאֵר בַּבַּיִת On our national holiday, I don't want to stay at home.

בְּחַג הַלְּאֻמִּי *on the national holiday*

37. אַתָּה צוֹדֵק, אֲנַחְנוּ נִקַּח אוֹתְךָ אִתָּנוּ You're right, we'll take you with us.

What happens

Part one

Susan is studying in the Ulpan at the Hebrew University. She talks about a lecture she heard about the history of the University from its early beginnings on Mt. Scopus, to the large and modern campus in West Jerusalem. She describes the campus and the nearby National Library.

Part two

הַמַּרְצֶה מְסַפֵּר The Lecturer relates . . .

Mike tells Susan about an interesting lecture he attended about the Hebrew University. He describes how the university opened on Mt. Scopus in 1925 and later moved to West Jerusalem in 1947.

אֲנִי מְדַבֶּרֶת עִבְרִית I speak Hebrew

Susan tells Mike about the Ulpan which she finds very interesting. She says that students from many countries come to study at the University and that she knows many Israeli boys with whom she can already speak Hebrew.

Part three

תַּלְמִידִים מְקַבְּלִים מִלְגּוֹת Students receive Grants

Susan asks about grants and Gil tells of a friend who received a grant to study law. Susan says that she is studying science and that most of her teachers are good.

Notes

Part one

1. אֲנִי לוֹמֶדֶת בָּאֻלְפָּן בַּכִּתָּה לְמִתְקַדְּמִים I am studying in the Ulpan in the advanced class.

a.	אֻלְפָּן	*intensive Hebrew language course*
b.	מִתְקַדְּמִים	*advanced (p.)*
2.	הָאֻלְפָּן שֶׁלָּנוּ נִמְצָא בָּאוּנִיבֶרְסִיטָה הָעִבְרִית	Our Ulpan is at the Hebrew University.
3.	אֶתְמוֹל שָׁמַעְנוּ הַרְצָאָה מְעַנְיֶנֶת עַל הָאוּנִיבֶרְסִיטָה	Yesterday I heard an interesting lecture at the University.
	הַרְצָאָה מְעַנְיֶנֶת	*an interesting lecture*
4.	הַמַּרְצֶה סִפֵּר לָנוּ שֶׁהָאוּנִיבֶרְסִיטָה הָעִבְרִית נִפְתְּחָה עַל הַר הַצּוֹפִים בְּאֶחָד בְּאַפְּרִיל אֶלֶף תְּשַׁע מֵאוֹת עֶשְׂרִים וְחָמֵשׁ	The lecturer told us that the Hebrew University was opened on Mount Scopus on April 1, 1925.
a.	מַרְצֶה	*lecturer* הַרְצָאָה *lecture*
b.	נִפְתְּחָה	*was opened (f.)* פָּתַח *open (v.)*
c.	הַר הַצּוֹפִים	*Mount Scopus*
d.	בְּאֶחָד בְּאַפְּרִיל	*on the first of April.* In Hebrew: *in one in April.*
5.	כַּאֲשֶׁר פָּרְצָה מִלְחֶמֶת הָעַצְמָאוּת עָבְרָה הָאוּנִיבֶרְסִיטָה לִירוּשָׁלַיִם הַחֲדָשָׁה	When the War of Independence broke out the University moved to New Jerusalem.
	פָּרְצָה מִלְחֶמֶת הָעַצְמָאוּת	*the War of Independence broke out*
6.	שֶׁטַח הָאוּנִיבֶרְסִיטָה כּוֹלֵל אֶת בִּנְיְנֵי הַפָּקוּלְטוֹת, הַסִּפְרִיָּה וּבִנְיְנֵי הַהַנְהָלָה	The campus includes the departmental buildings, the library and the administration buildings.
	בִּנְיְנֵי הַהַנְהָלָה	*the administration buildings*
7.	מְכוֹן בֶּן־צְבִי, הַמָּכוֹן לְיַהֲדוּת זְמַנֵּנוּ וּמְעוֹנוֹת הַסְּטוּדֶנְטִים	The Ben-Zvi Institute of Contemporary Jewry and the dormitories.
a.	מְכוֹן בֶּן־צְבִי	*Ben-Zvi Institute*, an academic institution in Jerusalem devoted to research into

		Jewish communities in the Middle East. It is attached to the Hebrew University. It is named after Yitzhak Ben-Zvi, second President of Israel.
b.	הַמָּכוֹן לְיַהֲדוּת זְמַנֵּנוּ	*the Institute of Contemporary Jewry.* יַהֲדוּת *Jewry, Judaism* יְהוּדִי *Jew*
c.	מְעוֹנוֹת הַסְּטוּדֶנְטִים	*dormitories* (i. e. students' halls of residence).
8.	בְּמֶשֶׁךְ הַשָּׁנִים נִבְנוּ בִּנְיָנִים יָפִים וּמַעְבָּדוֹת גְּדוֹלוֹת	Beautiful buildings and large laboratories were built over the years.
a.	נִבְנוּ בִּנְיָנִים יָפִים	*beautiful buildings were built*
b.	מַעְבָּדוֹת גְּדוֹלוֹת	*big laboratories*
9.	הַיּוֹם יֵשׁ בָּאוּנִיבֶרְסִיטָה הַפָּקוּלְטוֹת לִרְפוּאָה, מִשְׁפָּטִים, חַקְלָאוּת, מַדָּעֵי הַחֶבְרָה, מַדָּעֵי הַטֶּבַע וְעוֹד	Today there are faculties of medicine, law, agriculture, social science, natural science and others.
a.	פָּקוּלְטוֹת	*faculties.* In Israel, as in Europe, faculty refers to the department, not members of the faculty.
b.	רְפוּאָה	*medicine*
c.	מִשְׁפָּטִים	*law, legal studies*
d.	מַדָּעֵי הַחֶבְרָה	*social sciences*
e.	מַדָּעֵי הַטֶּבַע	*natural sciences*
10.	מִסְפַּר הָאֲנָשִׁים הָעוֹבְדִים כִּפְרוֹפֶסוֹרִים, מַרְצִים וּמַדְרִיכִים הוּא גָּדוֹל	The number of people working as professors, lecturers and teaching assistants is large.
	מַרְצִים וּמַדְרִיכִים	*lecturers and assistants.* At the Hebrew University מַרְצֶה *lecturer* corresponds to *assistant professor.* Likewise עוֹזֵר הוֹרָאָה *teaching assistant* מַדְרִיךְ *instructor.*

11.	מִסְפַּר הַסְּטוּדֶנְטִים בָּאוּנִיבֶרְסִיטָה גָּדֵל מִשָּׁנָה לְשָׁנָה	The number of students at the University grows from year to year.
12.	לְיַד הָאוּנִיבֶרְסִיטָה נִמְצֵאת הַסִּפְרִיָּה הַלְּאֻמִּית	The National Library is located near the University.
	הַסִּפְרִיָּה הַלְּאֻמִּית	*the National Library*, the university library housing over one million volumes.
13.	בַּסִּפְרִיָּה הַלְּאֻמִּית יֵשׁ קָרוֹב לְמִלְיוֹן סְפָרִים	There are nearly a million books in the National Library.
14.	אֲנִי שְׂמֵחָה שֶׁאֲנִי לוֹמֶדֶת בָּאוּנִיבֶרְסִיטָה	I am happy that I study at the University.

Part two

15.	הַמַּרְצֶה מְסַפֵּר	The lecturer gives his account (relates).
	מְסַפֵּר	*tells a story (an account)*
16.	אֶתְמוֹל הָיִיתִי בְּהַרְצָאָה מְעַנְיֶנֶת מְאֹד	Yesterday I attended a very interesting lecture.
17.	מֶה הָיָה נוֹשֵׂא הַהַרְצָאָה?	What was the subject of the lecture?
	נוֹשֵׂא הַהַרְצָאָה	*the subject of the lecture*
18.	הַיּוֹם הִיא בִּירוּשָׁלַיִם הַמַּעֲרָבִית	Now it's in West Jerusalem.
	יְרוּשָׁלַיִם הַמַּעֲרָבִית	*West Jerusalem*, as distinct from East Jerusalem which includes the Old City.
19.	מָתַי עָבְרָה לַמָּקוֹם הֶחָדָשׁ?	When did it move to the new location?
20.	בָּאֻלְפָּן שֶׁבּוֹ אֲנִי לוֹמֶדֶת נָעִים מְאֹד	It's nice in the Ulpan in which I am studying.
21.	הַתָּכְנִית מְעַנְיֶנֶת מְאֹד וְהַתַּלְמִידִים בַּכִּתָּה מְרֻצִּים מְאֹד	The programme is very interesting and the students are very contented.

22.	מֵאֵילוּ אֲרָצוֹת הַסְּטוּדֶנְטִים הַלּוֹמְדִים בְּכִתָּתֵךְ	From which countries are the students that study in your class?
23.	הַשָּׁנָה רוֹאִים הַרְבֵּה מְאֹד סְטוּדֶנְטִים זָרִים בָּאוּנִיבֶרְסִיטָה	This year you see a lot of foreign students at the University
24.	אַתְּ מַכִּירָה יִשְׂרְאֵלִיּוֹת רַבּוֹת?	Do you know many Israeli girls?
25.	אֲנִי גָּרָה בִּמְעוֹנוֹת הַסְּטוּדֶנְטִים	I live in the student dormitories.

Part three

26.	שָׁמַעְתִּי שֶׁתַּלְמִידִים טוֹבִים מְקַבְּלִים פְּרָסִים וּמִלְגוֹת	I heard that good students get prizes and grants.
	מִלְגוֹת	*grants, scholarships*
27.	נָכוֹן, חֲבֵרִי הַטּוֹב קִבֵּל מִלְגָּה בַּשָּׁנָה הַשְּׁלִישִׁית לְלִמּוּדָיו	That's right, a good friend of mine received a scholarship in the third year of his studies.
	בַּשָּׁנָה הַשְּׁלִישִׁית לְלִמּוּדָיו	*in the third year of (to) his studies.*
28.	בְּאֵיזוֹ פָקוּלְטָה הוּא לָמַד?	In which department did he study?
29.	כֵּן, הַפְּרוֹפֶסוֹר שֶׁלִּי לְזוֹאוֹלוֹגְיָה הוּא מְצֻיָּן	Yes, my zoology teacher is excellent.
30.	אֵיךְ שְׁאָר הַפְּרוֹפֶסוֹרִים?	What are the rest of the professors like?
31.	אָמְנָם הַפְּרוֹפֶסוֹר לְבּוֹטָנִיקָה מְשַׁעֲמֵם קְצָת אַךְ הוּא גֶּבֶר יָפֶה	Though the botany professor is a little boring, he's a handsome man.

Lesson thirty A letter from Haifa

What happens

Part one

Susan writes to Gil about a trip she took to Haifa and Safed. She found Haifa a lively city. She climbed Mt. Carmel and photographed the view from the top. From there she continued north to Tiberias and Safed. The guide spoke about the history of the ancient city, Safed, then they visited the "artists' colony". She says she enjoyed the trip very much.

Part two

בִּנְמַל חֵיפָה In the Port of Haifa
Susan is at the port of Haifa. The guide speaks about the port and says that he arrived there with his parents as an immigrant at the age of seven and his parents still live in Haifa.

מִכְתָּב מֵחֵיפָה A Letter from Haifa
Gil tells Mrs. Tal about a letter he received from Susan who is visiting Haifa. According to the letter Susan likes the city and has visited all the interesting places there.

Part three
מִתְרַחֲצִים בַּכִּנֶּרֶת Bathing in the Kinneret
The guide tells Susan that they will stop to bathe in Lake Kinneret and then continue to Safed. He tells a little about the history of Safed and the places they will visit. They arrive at the Kinneret.

Notes

Part one

1. יוֹם שִׁשִּׁי, שְׁמוֹנָה בְּיוּנִי — Friday, June 8th.
For indicating the date in Hebrew, see Grammar Appendix, Note 16.

2. לְגִיל שָׁלוֹם רַב — Greetings, Gil.
This is one form of greeting in writing a letter. You can write to a friend חָבֵר יָקָר *dear friend (m.),* חֲבֵרָה יְקָרָה *dear friend (f.),* דָּוִד יָקָר *dear David.* More formally you would write אָדוֹן נִכְבָּד *dear Sir* or אָדוֹן דָּוִד הַיָּקָר *dear Mr. David* etc.

3. בְּרֹאשׁ וּבְרִאשׁוֹנָה אֶשְׁאַל לִשְׁלוֹמְךָ אֶצְלִי הַכֹּל בְּסֵדֶר — First and foremost I ask how you are. Everything is fine with me.
בְּרֹאשׁ וּבְרִאשׁוֹנָה — *first and foremost,* both from רֹאשׁ *head*

4. אֲנִי מַרְגִּישָׁה טוֹב וּמְבַלָּה מְצֻיָּן — I feel well and am having a wonderful time.

5. הַשָּׁבוּעַ הִצְטָרַפְתִּי לְטִיּוּל מְאֻרְגָּן לְחֵיפָה וְלִצְפַת — This week I joined an organized tour to Haifa and Safed.
a. הִצְטָרַפְתִּי לְטִיּוּל מְאֻרְגָּן — *I joined an organized excursion.*
b. חֵיפָה — *Haifa.* Israel's main port. It is famous for its many industries and fine residential suburbs on the slopes of Mt. Carmel. The world centre of the Bahai faith is located there. The Hebrew Technion, Israel's Institute of Technology is also in Haifa.

6. הָיִינוּ קְבוּצָה שֶׁל שְׁלֹשִׁים אִישׁ וְנָסַעְנוּ בְּאוֹטוֹ שֶׁל תַּיָּרִים — We were a group of thirty and we travelled in a tourist bus.
thirty men. Hebrew: *man (s.).* See Grammar Appendix, Note 14.

7. חֵיפָה הִיא עִיר מְלֵאַת חַיִּים וּתְנוּעָה — Haifa is a city full of life and activity.
עִיר מְלֵאַת חַיִּים — *a city full of life.* Remember עִיר *city* is feminine.

8. הַמַּדְרִיךְ סִפֵּר לָנוּ שֶׁחֵיפָה הִיא עִיר הַנָּמֵל הַגְּדוֹלָה וְהַחֲשׁוּבָה בְּיוֹתֵר שֶׁל יִשְׂרָאֵל — The guide told us that Israel's biggest and most important port is Haifa.

הַגְּדוֹלָה וְהַחֲשׁוּבָה בְּיוֹתֵר — *the biggest and most important*

9. אָנוּ בִּקַּרְנוּ בַּנָּמֵל וְרָאִינוּ עוֹלִים חֲדָשִׁים בָּאִים — We visited the port and saw new immigrants arriving.

עוֹלִים חֲדָשִׁים — *new immigrants*

עֲלִיָּה *immigration*

10. מִשָּׁם עָלִינוּ עַל הַר הַכַּרְמֶל — From there, we ascended Mt. Carmel.

11. הַנּוֹף מֵרֹאשׁ הָהָר הוּא נֶהְדָּר — The view from the top of the mountain is beautiful.

12. מֵרֹאשׁ הָהָר רָאִינוּ אֶת כָּל הָעִיר, הַנָּמֵל וְהַיָּם — From the top of the mountain, we saw the whole city, the port and the sea.

13. צִלַּמְתִּי אֶת הַנּוֹף בְּסֶרֶט צִבְעוֹנִי — I photographed the view with a colour film.

בְּסֶרֶט צִבְעוֹנִי — *with a coloured film*

14. מֵחֵיפָה הִמְשַׁכְנוּ לִנְסֹעַ צָפוֹנָה — From Haifa, we continued travelling north.

15. בַּדֶּרֶךְ עָבַרְנוּ עַל פְּנֵי יִשּׁוּבִים רַבִּים — We passed many settlements on the way.

16. בִּקַּרְנוּ בִּטְבֶרְיָה וְהִתְרַחַצְנוּ בַּכִּנֶּרֶת מִטְּבֶרְיָה נָסַעְנוּ לִצְפַת — We visited Tiberias and bathed in Lake Kinneret. From Tiberias, we travelled to Safed.

בַּכִּנֶּרֶת — *in the Kinneret.* Kinneret is the Hebrew name for the Sea of Galilee.

17. הַמַּדְרִיךְ סִפֵּר לָנוּ שֶׁלִּפְנֵי אַרְבַּע מֵאוֹת שָׁנָה הָיְתָה צְפַת עִיר חֲשׁוּבָה מְאֹד — The guide told us that 400 years ago Safed was a very important city.

a. שֶׁלִּפְנֵי אַרְבַּע מֵאוֹת שָׁנָה — *that four hundred years ago*

b. עִיר חֲשׁוּבָה מְאֹד — *a very important city.* Note the reverse order of the words in Hebrew.

18. מֶרְכָּז מִסְחָרִי לָאֵזוֹר וּמֶרְכָּז רוּחָנִי לַיְּהוּדִים — It was a commercial centre for the area and a spiritual centre for the Jews.

a. מֶרְכָּז מִסְחָרִי — *an industrial city*

b. מֶרְכָּז רוּחָנִי — *a spiritual city* רוּחַ *spirit*, also *wind*.

19. אֲנַחְנוּ בִּקַּרְנוּ בִּ"שְׁכוּנַת הַצַּיָּרִים" — We visited the "artists' colony."

20. וְרָאִינוּ כַּמָּה תַּעֲרוּכוֹת יָפוֹת — And we saw a few lovely exhibits.

כַּמָּה תַּעֲרוּכוֹת — *a number of exhibits*

21. אֲנִי נֶהֱנֵיתִי מֵהַטִּיּוּל הַזֶּה מְאֹד — I enjoyed the trip very much.

22. חָזַרְתִּי הַבַּיְתָה עֲיֵפָה אַךְ מְרֻצָּה — I returned home tired but contented.

23. כֵּיצַד בִּלִּיתָ בַּשָּׁבוּעַ הָאַחֲרוֹן? — How did you spend (your time) last week?

כֵּיצַד בִּלִּיתָ? — *how did you spend your time?*

24. שֶׁלְּךָ סוּזָן — Yours, Susan.

שֶׁלְּךָ סוּזָן — *Yours, Susan.* You may conclude your informal letter by saying בִּבְרָכָה *with a greeting* בִּידִידוּת *with friendship* or בְּאַהֲבָה *with love* or formally בְּכָבוֹד רַב *respectfully (with much respect).*

Part two

25. חֵיפָה הִיא עִיר נָמֵל גְּדוֹלָה וַחֲשׁוּבָה — Haifa is a large and important port (city).

26. כֵּן, נְמַל חֵיפָה הוּא הַנָּמֵל הַגָּדוֹל בְּיִשְׂרָאֵל — Yes, Haifa is the biggest port in Israel.

27.	הִנֵּה עוֹלִים חֲדָשִׁים בָּאִים לְיִשְׂרָאֵל	Here are new immigrants coming to Israel.
28.	גַּם אֲנִי עָלִיתִי לְיִשְׂרָאֵל בְּנָמֵל זֶה	I entered Israel through this port too.
29.	בֶּן כַּמָּה הָיִיתָ כַּאֲשֶׁר עָלִיתָ לְיִשְׂרָאֵל?	How old were you when you came to Israel?
30.	אַתָּה חֵיפָאִי? עַכְשָׁו אֲנִי מְבִינָה אֶת אַהֲבָתְךָ לְעִיר זוֹ	You're an inhabitant of Haifa? Now I understand your love for this city.
a.	חֵיפָאִי	*an inhabitant of Haifa.* Note also תֵּל־אָבִיבִי *an inhabitant of Tel-Aviv* יְרוּשַׁלְמִי *an inhabitant of Jerusalem.*
b.	אֲנִי מְבִינָה	*I understand (f.)* אֲנִי מֵבִין *I understand (m.)*
c.	עִיר זוֹ	*this city*
31.	הַחוֹתֶמֶת עַל הַבּוּל אוֹמֶרֶת ״חֵיפָה״	The postmark on the stamp says "Haifa".
	הַחוֹתֶמֶת עַל הַבּוּל	*the postmark on the stamp* חוֹתֶמֶת *seal*
32.	הִיא כּוֹתֶבֶת שֶׁחֵיפָה הִיא עִיר מְלֵאַת חַיִּים וּתְנוּעָה	She writes that Haifa is a city full of life and traffic.
	עִיר מְלֵאַת חַיִּים וּתְנוּעָה	*A city full of life and traffic*
33.	הַגַּנִּים הַצִּבּוּרִיִּים שֶׁלָּהּ רַבִּים וְנָאִים	There are many beautiful public gardens. (Her public gardens are many and beautiful).
34.	הֵם גַּם נָסְעוּ לְקִרְיַת הַטֶּכְנִיּוֹן, נָכוֹן?	They also went to the Technion Campus, didn't they?
	קִרְיַת הַטֶּכְנִיּוֹן	*the campus of the Technion.* The Technion is the Israeli Institute of Technology.
35.	כְּדֵי לִרְאוֹת אֶת הַנּוֹף וְכֵן לְאֵזוֹר הַתַּעֲשִׂיָּה	In order to see the view and likewise the industrial zone

a.	כְּדֵי לִרְאוֹת	*in order to see*
b.	וְכֵן לְאֵזוֹר הַתַּעֲשִׂיָּה	*and likewise the industrial zone*
36.	מִכְתָּב מְעַנְיֵן, אֲנִי רוֹאָה שֶׁסּוּזָן נֶהֱנֵית מְאֹד מֵהַבִּקּוּר בָּאָרֶץ	It's an interesting letter. I see that Susan enjoyed her trip to Israel.

Part three

37.	מִתְרַחֲצִים בַּכִּנֶּרֶת	Bathing in the Kinneret.
38.	אֲנַחְנוּ מִתְקָרְבִים לַכִּנֶּרֶת	We are approaching the Kinneret.
39.	הָיִיתִי רוֹצָה לְנַצֵּל אֶת הַהִזְדַּמְּנוּת וּלְהִתְרַחֵץ בַּכִּנֶּרֶת	I would like to take advantage of the opportunity to swim in the Kinneret.
	לְנַצֵּל אֶת הַהִזְדַּמְּנוּת	*to take advantage (to exploit the opportunity)*
40.	הָרַחֲצָה בַּכִּנֶּרֶת הִיא הַפְתָּעַת הַיּוֹם	Bathing in the Kinneret is the surprise of the day.
	הָרַחֲצָה בַּכִּנֶּרֶת	*bathing in the Kinneret*
41.	הֵיכָן נָלוּן הַלַּיְלָה?	Where will we stay the night?
	נָלוּן	*we shall stay overnight.* מָלוֹן *hotel* is of the same root לון
42.	נָכוֹן, בִּצְפַת פָּרְחָה תּוֹרַת הַקַּבָּלָה	That's right. In Safed, the Kabbalah doctrine flourished.
	קַבָּלָה	*Kabbalah, (tradition, heritage).* Medieval Jewish mysticism.
43.	גַּם בֵּית הַדְּפוּס הָרִאשׁוֹן בָּאָרֶץ נוֹסַד בָּהּ	The first printing house in Israel was established there too.
	נוֹסַד בָּהּ	*it was founded there (in it)*
44.	בִּשְׁכוּנַת הַצַּיָּרִים וּבִמְצוּדַת הַצַּלְבָנִים	In the artists' colony and the Crusaders' Castle.
45.	אֵיזֶה מַרְאֶה! אֵיזֶה יֹפִי!	What a view! What a beauty!